

## 使用说明

本书选用的语言材料都是规范的汉语普通话口语材料。一般的口语教材多以话题情境为纲,汉语教材多以语言知识为纲。前者容易忽略语言知识的系统性,后者容易忽略语言材料的实用性。本书力图克服上述不足,把二者有机地结合起来,在以话题情境为纲组织教材内容的同时,以《汉语水平考试》(HSK)的甲级语法点(133点)为安排语言知识的依据,并注意了同乙级语法点的衔接和过渡,本书侧重于培养学习者听和说的能力。

《速成汉语》把日常生活用语分成 15 个话题(问候和介绍、学校生活、问路和旅游、时间和日期、乘车、在旅馆、访问和作客、购物、季节和天气、健康和医疗、饮食、讨论问题、兴趣爱好、贸易、学习汉语),每课学习一个话题的部分用语,全书共 45 课,每 15 课为一个循环。第一个 15 课是 15 个话题中最基本的内容,掌握了它,就可以完成简单的汉语交际。后两个 15 课在此基础上逐渐加以扩展,使每个话题得以丰富和深化。其中第三个循环特别突出了商业经贸用语。每课设有基本句型、课文、注释、练习、生词五个项目,课文以对话体为主,以训练听说能力;从第八课起增设叙述体短文,以训练阅读和理解能力。全部课文配有英语译文,课文中的对话体语料全部标注了

汉语拼音,15课以前的叙述体短文也标注了汉语拼音。课文和句型均配有简明实用的注释,用以讲解语法知识。每课安排10个句型,约18个生词,全书共450个句型,约800个汉语词(包括词组)。本书在词汇和语法点的安排上注意体现重现和渐进的原则,以便于学习者。本书还配有插图和录音带

《速成汉语》适用于在校学生的课堂教学,按照每周两课的进度,六个月可以学完这本书。教师根据学生的不同情况可以任意选择其中的一个循环(15课)进行教学。本书也可以作为会话手册,供给愿意学习汉语的各界人士自学之用。

本书由郭嘉惠女士作了英文翻译,特此致谢!

**何 慕**

一九九六年九月

于北大燕北园

## Foreword On Use

The language materials selected for this book are all standard Chinese Putonghua oral materials. Most of the ordinary oral teaching materials base on the situation of a conversational topic while language teaching materials mostly used language knowledge as the guiding principle, the latter overlooks the practicality of language materials.

*Speed-up Chinese* strives to overcome the above mentioned deficiency and to integrate the two as an organic whole. When situation of a conversational topic is used as the guiding principle to constitutes the content of the teaching material, the first-rate grammar point(133 points)of the *Chinese Level Examination*(HSK) is added as the basis of arranging language knowledge. The book also tries to achieve the link-up and transition with second-rate grammar point. This book lay particular emphasis on fostering the listening and speaking ability of the learner.

*Speed-up Chinese* divides everyday phraseology into 15 situations of conversational topics(greetings and introduction, school life, travelling, time and date, take a car, at the hotel, interview and sojourn, purchase of things, seasons and weather, illness and health, diet, discussion of questions, interest and hobby, trading, learning Chinese). Every lesson teaches part of the phraseology of each conversational topic. There are altogether 45 lessons. Every 15 lessons are a cycle. The first 15 lessons have got the most basic contents among the 15 conversational topics. Mastering it will enable

the learner to make some simple Chinese communications . The latter two 15 lessons develop gradually on this foundation, allowing the 15 conversational topics to be enriched and intensified. The third cycle prepares particularly for learners some commercial trade phraseology. Every lesson consists of five parts: basic sentence pattern, text, annotation, exercises, new words. The text is mainly in the conversational mode. It is designed to train the listening and speaking ability. Short narrative essays are included from Lesson 8. to train the reading and comprehension ability. All texts come along with English translations. Hanyu Pinyin has been filled in for all the conversations in the texts, as well as for the short, narrative essays before Lesson 15. The texts and sentence patterns are accompanied with concise and practical annotations, explaining grammatical phenomena. Each lesson has got 10 sentence patterns, approximately 18 new words, so there are 450 sentence patterns altogether, approximately 800 Chinese phrases. The arrangement of vocabulary and grammar points in this book follow the principle of progress step by step. Exquisite pictures are included for the convenience of the learner. This text has accompanying audiotapes.

*Speed-up Chinese* is applicable for classroom-teaching. If the planned schedule of two lessons per week is followed, this book can be completed in six months. The teacher can arbitrarily select any cycle (15 lessons) to teach on the basis of the different conditions of the students. This book can be a conversational handbook too, capable of meeting the different needs of individuals who are willing to study Chinese on their own.

## 课文目录      texts    cataloglle

1. 你好	How do you do!	1
2. 上课	Attending class	8
3. 银行在哪儿	Where is the bank?	15
4. 几点了	What's the time?	22
5. 坐出租汽车	Taking a taxi	30
6. 你住 507 号	your room is 507	38
7. 拜访老师	Visiting the teacher	46
8. 买橘子	To buy tangerines	54
9. 下雨了	It is raining	62
10. 我头疼	I have a headache	69
11. 喝茶	Drinking tea	76
12. 星期天干什么	What are you doing on Sunday?	85
13. 喜欢古典音乐	I like classical music	94
14. 欢迎您	you are welcomed	102
15. 你学过中文吗	Have you learned Chinese?	110
16. 我的汉语老师	My Chinese teacher	119
17. 开学了	Term has started	128
18. 去动物园	To the Zoo	137
19. 生日	Birthday	147
20. 坐火车	Taking a train	156
21. 饭店里住着各国客人	Accommodates Guests	
from various countries in the hotel		165

22. 你的家真漂亮	your house is really pretty	174
23. 买衣服	Buying clothes	183
24. 春天到了	Spring is here	191
25. 吃药和锻炼	Taking medicine and exercises	200
26. 点菜	Ordering food	209
27. 减肥	Dieting	218
28. 爱好体育	Go in for sports	227
29. 合作	Cooperation	237
30. 读中文报纸	Reading Chinese papers	246
31. 他来做买卖	Doing business	256
32. 我的专业	My speciality	265
33. 旅游	Traveling	275
34. 昨天、今天、明天……	yesterday, today and tomorrow……	285
35. 坐飞机	Taking a plane	294
36. 饭店的服务	Services in the hotel	304
37. 参加晚会	Attending a party	313
38. 进口纺织品	Importing textiles	322
39. 南北气候差别	Differences in weather between the south and the north	331
40. 看病	Seeing a doctor	341
41. 宴会	Banquet	350
42. 定货	Ordering goods	360
43. 看广告	Watching Advertisements	370
44. 参观博览会	Visiting the Fair	380
45. 请帮我看中文合同	Please have a look at the Chinese contract	389

## 话题目录      topics    catalogue

1. 问候和介绍      greetings and introductions
2. 学校生活      school life
3. 问路和旅游      traveling
4. 时间和日期      time and date
5. 乘车      taking a car
6. 在旅馆      at the hotel
7. 访问和作客      Visiting and sojourn
8. 购物      purchase of things
9. 季节和天气      seasons and weather
10. 健康和医疗      health and medical services
11. 饮食      food and drink
12. 讨论问题      discussion of questions
13. 兴趣爱好      interest and hobby
14. 贸易      trade
15. 学习汉语      learning Chinese

## 话题重现索引      topics    index

<b>1. 问候与介绍</b>	
1.1 你好	1 页
1.2 我的汉语老师	119 页
1.3 他来做买卖	256 页
<b>2. 学校生活</b>	
2.1 上课	8 页
2.2 开学了	128 页
2.3 我的专业	265 页
<b>3. 问路和旅游</b>	
3.1 银行在哪儿	15 页
3.2 去动物园	137 页
3.3 旅游	275 页
<b>4. 时间和日期</b>	
4.1 几点了	22 页
4.2 生日	147 页
4.3 昨天、今天、明天……	285 页
<b>5. 乘车</b>	
5.1 坐出租汽车	30 页
5.2 坐火车	156 页
5.3 坐飞机	294 页



<b>6. 在旅馆</b>	
6.1 你住 507 号	38 页
6.2 饭店里住着各国客人	165 页
6.3 饭店的服务	304 页
<b>7. 访问和作客</b>	
7.1 拜访老师	46 页
7.2 你的家真漂亮	174 页
7.3 参加晚会	313 页
<b>8. 购物</b>	
8.1 买橘子	54 页
8.2 买衣服	183 页
8.3 进口纺织品	321 页
<b>9. 季节和天气</b>	
9.1 下雨了	62 页
9.2 春天到了	191 页
9.3 南北气候差别	330 页
<b>10. 健康和医疗</b>	
10.1 我头疼	69 页
10.2 吃药和锻炼	200 页
10.3 看病	340 页
<b>11. 饮食</b>	
11.1 喝茶	76 页
11.2 点菜	209 页
11.3 宴会	349 页
<b>12. 讨论问题</b>	
12.1 星期天干什么	85 页
12.2 减肥	218 页

12.3	定货	359 页
<b>13.</b>	<b>兴趣爱好</b>	
13.1	喜欢古典音乐	94 页
13.2	爱好体育	227 页
13.3	看广告	369 页
<b>14.</b>	<b>贸易</b>	
14.1	欢迎您	102 页
14.2	合作	237 页
14.3	参观博览会	379 页
<b>15.</b>	<b>学习汉语</b>	
15.1	你学过中文吗	110 页
15.2	读中文报纸	246 页
15.3	请帮我看中文合同	388 页

# 1. 你好      How do you do!

## I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

1. 你好!

Nǐ hǎo !

Hello!

2. 您好!

Nín hǎo!

Hello! (Polite form of address)

3. 你们好!

Nǐmen hǎo!

Hello! Everybody!

4. 你好吗?

Nǐ hǎo ma ?

How are you?

5. 我很好。

Wǒ hěn hǎo.

I'm fine.

6. 他也很好。

Tā yě hěn hǎo.

He is fine too.

7. 我们都很好。

Wǒmen dōu hěn hǎo.

We are all fine.

8. 你叫什么？

Nǐ jiào shénme?

What's your name?

9. 我叫王红。

Wǒ jiào Wáng Hóng.

I am WangHong.

10. 你呢？

Nǐ ne?

What about you?

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 你好!

Nǐ hǎo!

Hello!

B: 你好!

Nǐ hǎo!

Hello!

A: 你好吗?

Nǐ hǎo ma?

How are you?

B: 我很好。你呢?

Wǒ hěn hǎo. Nǐ ne?

I'm fine. What about you?

A: 我也很好。

Wǒ yě hěn hǎo.

I'm fine too.

(二)

A: 你们好!

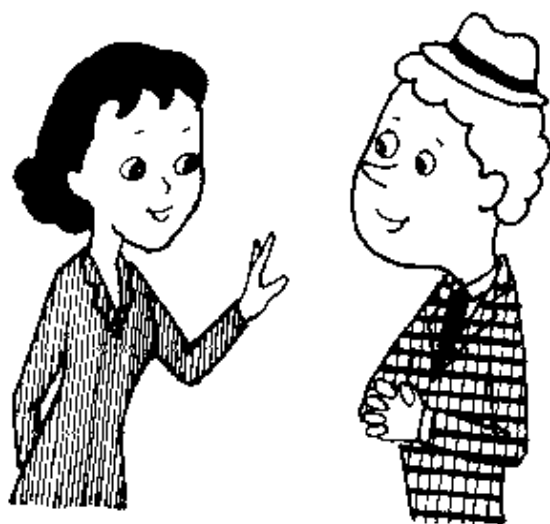
Nǐmen hǎo !

(teacher) Hello! Everybody!

B: 您好!

Nín hǎo.

(students) Hello! (polite form of address)



A: 你们好吗?

Nǐmen hǎo ma?

How are all of you?

B: 我们都很好。

Wǒmen dōu hěn hǎo.

We are all fine.

A: 你叫什么?

Nǐ jiào shénme?

What is your name?

B: 我叫王红。

Wǒ jiào Wáng Hóng.

I'm Wang Hong.

A: 他呢?

Tā ne?

What about him?

B: 他叫大卫。

Tā jiào Dàwèi.

He is David.

### III. 注释:      Annotation:

1. “你好”,是最常用的打招呼用语。早上、下午、晚上都可以用。  
“你好”, is commonly used when greetings are exchanged. It can be used in the morning, afternoon or evening.
2. “您”,是一种客气的说法,称呼长辈或尊敬的人。  
“您”, is a polite form of address. It can be used to address the

elders or respected people.

3. “们”,可以用来表示复数,如:我——我们,你——你们,他——他们。

“们”, is used to express plural number, like; 我——我们, I—we, 你——你们, you—you (second person plural), 他——他们 he—they.

4. “我很好”,回答别人的问候时,要说“我很好”,不说“我好”。“很”在这里不是真的表示程度。

“我很好”, when answering one's greetings, it is required to say “我很好”, not to say “我好”, “很” is not really used to express the degree or level here.

5. “你好吗”,在一个句子后面加上“吗”表示疑问,这是汉语最常用的一种疑问句。

“你好吗?” to include “吗” at the end of a sentence to express enquiry, it is one of the most commonly used interrogative sentence in the Chinese language.

6. “也”和“都”,汉语的“也”和“都”只能出现在动词前,或者副词前。例如:“他很好”、“他也很好”。下面的句子是错误的:“也他很好”、“他很也好”、“他很好也”。

“也” and “都”, in Chinese, “也” and “都” only appear before verbs and adverbs. For example: “他很好”、“他也很好”。 The following sentences are incorrect: “也他很好”、“他很也好”、“他很好也”。

7. “你呢”,在代词或者表示人的名词后加上“呢”,构成另一种疑问句。

“你呢”, to include “呢” after pronouns or nouns which indicate people, it forms another type of interrogative sentence.

## IV. 练习: Exercises

### 1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

- (1) A: 你好吗? (2) A: 你们好!  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
A: 他好吗? A: 你们好吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 B: \_\_\_\_\_。
- (3) A: 你叫什么? (4) A: 他叫什么?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
A: 她叫什么? A: 你呢?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 B: \_\_\_\_\_。

### 2. 选择正确答案: Choose the correct answer

- (1) A: 你好!  
B: a. 我好。 b. 您好。 c. 很好。 d. 他很好。
- (2) A: 你好吗?  
B: a. 你好! b. 我也很好。 c. 你们好! d. 很好。
- (3) A: 你们好!  
B: a. 你好! b. 我们很好。 c. 他也很好。 d. 我们都好。

## V. 生词: New words

- |      |     |     |                  |
|------|-----|-----|------------------|
| 1. 你 | nǐ  | (代) | you              |
| 2. 好 | hǎo | (形) | fine             |
| 3. 您 | nín | (代) | you(polite form) |



4.	你们	nǐmen	(代)	everybody
5.	吗	ma	(助)	<i>particle</i>
6.	我	wǒ	(代)	I
7.	很	hěn	(副)	very
8.	他	tā	(代)	he
9.	也	yě	(副)	also, too, either
10.	我们	wǒmen	(代)	we
11.	都	dōu	(副)	all
12.	叫	jiào	(动)	call
13.	什么	shénme	(代)	what
14.	呢	ne	(助)	<i>particle</i>
15.	王红	Wáng Hóng		Wang Hong
16.	大卫	Dàwèi		David

## 2. 上课      Attending class

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

11. 现在我们上课。  
Xiànzài wǒmen shàng kè.  
Now let's begin our class.
12. 请打开书。  
Qǐng dǎkāi shū.  
Please open the book.
13. 请再说一遍。  
Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.  
Please say it once again.
14. 请读生词。  
Qǐng dú shēngcí.  
Please read the new words.
15. 请你读课文。  
Qǐng nǐ dú kèwén.  
Please read the text.
16. 你明白了吗?  
Nǐ míngbai le ma?  
Do you understand?

17. 我明白了。  
Wǒ míngbai le.  
I have understood.
18. 不,我不明白。  
Bù, wǒ bù míngbai.  
No, I do not understand.
19. 现在做练习。  
Xiànzài zuò liànxí.  
Do the exercises now.
20. 下课。  
Xià kè.  
Class is dismissed.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 同学们好!  
Tóngxuémen hǎo.  
Hello! Students!

B: 老师好!  
Lǎoshī hǎo.  
Hello! Teacher!

A: 现在我们上课。请打开书。  
Xiànzài wǒmen shàng kè. Qǐng dǎkāi shū.  
Let's begin our class now. Please open the book.

B: 老师,请您再说一遍。

Lǎoshī, qǐng nín zài shuō yí biàn.

Teacher, please say it once again.

A: 请打开书。明白了吗?

Qǐng dǎkāi shū. míngbai le ma?

Please open the book. Do you understand?

B: 我们明白了。

Wǒmen míngbai le.

We have understood.

A: 很好。请读生词。

Hěn hǎo. qǐng dú shēngcí.

Very good. Please read the new words.

(二)

A: 你好,你叫什么?

Nǐ hǎo, nǐ jiào shénme?

Hello, what is your name?

B: 我叫王红。

Wǒ jiào Wáng Hóng.

I'm Wang Hong.

A: 他呢?

Tā ne ?

What about him?

B: 他叫大卫。

Tā jiào Dàwèi.

He's David.

A: 现在我们做练习。

Xiànzài wǒmen zuò liànxí.

Now let us do the exercises .

B: 我不明白。

Wǒ bù míngbai.

I do not understand.

A: 我再说一次, 现在做练习。

Wǒ zài shuō yí cì, xiànzài zuò liànxí.

I say it again, do the exercises now.

B: 明白了。

Míngbai le.

I understand.

A: 请你读课文。

Qǐng nǐ dú kèwén.

Please read the text.

B: 好。

Hǎo.

All right.



### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “请打开书”, “打开”是一个结果补语式。动词“开”出现在“打”后, 补充说明“打”的结果。

“请打开书”，“打开”is in the resultant complement mood. The verb“开”appears after “打”to explain the result of “打”.

2. “再说一遍”，“说”+“一遍”，表示动作的量。其他如：“读一遍”、“做一遍”。“说一次”、“说一遍”意思相同。

“再说一遍”，“说”+“一遍”，indicates the times of the action. Others like: “读一遍”，“做一遍”。“说一次”，“说一遍” has got the same meaning.

3. “了”，用在动词后面，表示动作已经完成。

“了”，it is used after verbs to indicate the completion of actions.

4. “不”，表示否定，可以用在动词前面，也可以单独使用。

“不”is to express negative meaning. It can be used before verbs or used independently too.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 同学们好!

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你叫什么?

吗?

B: 我叫\_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 请你读生词。

B: 我不明白,\_\_\_\_\_。

A: 请你读生词,明白了

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 把下列动词或动词词组变成否定式(用“不”): To change the following verbs or verbal phrases to the negative form (Use “不”)

(1) 打开书

(2) 上课

- |         |         |
|---------|---------|
| (3) 读生词 | (4) 读课文 |
| (5) 明白  | (6) 做练习 |
| (7) 下课  | (8) 叫王红 |

### 3. 翻译: Translation

- (1) 同学们开始上课了。
- (2) 我们打开了书。
- (3) 老师读了课文。
- (4) 你说什么?
- (5) 我也做练习吗?
- (6) 你们都做练习。
- (7) 对不起,我不明白你说什么。
- (8) 同学们请老师再读一次生词。

### V. 生词: New words

1. 现在	xiànzài	(名)	now
2. 上课	shàng kè		attend class
3. 请	qǐng	(动)	please
4. 打开	dǎkāi	(动)	open
5. 书	shū	(名)	book
6. 再	zài	(副)	again
7. 说	shuō	(动)	say
8. 一遍	yí biàn		once
9. 读	dú	(动)	read
10. 生词	shēngcí	(名)	new words
11. 课文	kèwén	(名)	text

12.	明白	míngbai	(形)	understand
13.	了	le	(助)	<i>particle</i>
14.	不	bù	(副)	no
15.	做	zuò	(动)	do
16.	练习	liànxí	(名)	exercises
17.	下课	xià kè		Class is over. Class is dismissed
18.	同学们	tóngxuémen	(名)	students
19.	老师	lǎoshī	(名)	teacher
20.	一次	yí cì		once



### 3. 银行在哪儿      Where is the bank?

#### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

21. 请问, 银行在哪儿?  
Qǐng wèn, yínháng zài nǎr?  
May I ask, Where is the bank?
22. 在前边。  
Zài qiánbiān.  
It is just ahead.
23. 怎么走?  
Zěnmē zǒu?  
How do I get there?
24. 往右拐。  
Wǎng yòu guǎi.  
Turn to the right.
25. 银行在商店旁边。  
Yínháng zài shāngdiàn pángbiān.  
The bank is beside the store.
26. 在马路左边。  
Zài mǎlù zuǒbian.  
It is on the left side of the road.

27. 远吗?

Yuǎn ma?

Is it far away?

28. 不远。

Bù yuǎn.

It is not far away.

29. 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

30. 不客气。

Bú kèqi.

You're welcome.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 请问, 银行在哪儿?

Qǐng wèn, yínháng zài nǎr?

May I ask, Where is the bank?

B: 银行在前边。

Yínháng zài qiánbian.

The bank is just ahead.

A: 远吗?

Yuǎn ma?

Is it far away?

B: 不远。

Bù yuǎn.

It is not far away.

A: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

B: 不客气。

Bú kèqi.

You are welcome.

(二)

A: 请问,商店在哪儿?

Qǐng wèn, shāngdiàn zài  
nǎr?

May I ask, where is the  
store?

B: 商店在银行旁边。

Shāngdiàn zài yínháng  
pángbiān.

It is beside the bank.

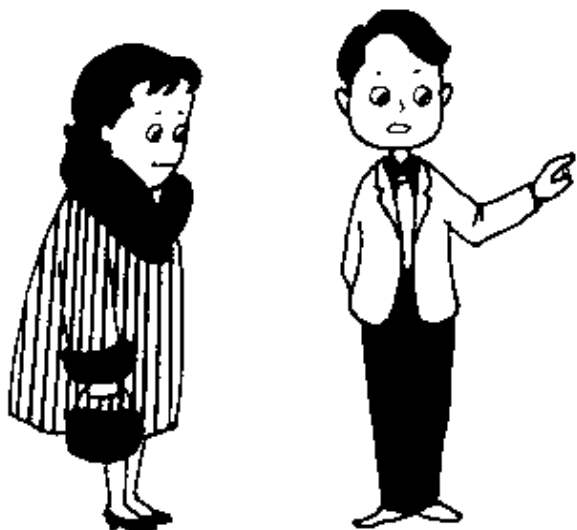
A: 怎么走?

Zěnmē zǒu?

How can I get there?

B: 往右拐。

Wǎng yòu guǎi.



Turn to the right.

A: 请再说一次。

Qǐng zài shuō yí cì.

Please say it once again.

B: 往右拐, 在银行旁边。

Wǎng yòu guǎi, zài yínháng pángbiān.

Turn to the right, and it is beside the bank.

### (三)

A: 请问, 商店在马路左边吗?

Qǐng wèn, shāngdiàn zài mǎlù zuǒbian ma?

May I ask, is the store on the left side of the road?

B: 不, 商店在马路右边。

Bù, shāngdiàn zài mǎlù yòubian.

No, it is on the right side of the road.

A: 银行呢?

Yínháng ne?

What about the bank?

B: 银行也在马路右边。

Yínháng yě zài mǎlù yòubian.

The bank is also on the right side of the road.

### Ⅲ. 注释      Annotation

1. “请问”, “请问”是汉语中最常用的礼貌用语之一, 用在句子开

头。

“请问”，“请问” is one of the most commonly used phrases which express courtesy. It is used at the begining of a sentence.

2. “怎么走”，“怎么”用在动词“走”前，询问“走”的方向，也可以询问动作的方式。如：“怎么说”、“怎么读”、“怎么做”。

“怎么走”？“怎么” is used before the verb “走” to express the inquiry about the direction of “走”， it can also be used to ask about the way of the movement. For example: “怎么说” “How to say”，“怎么读” “How to read”，“怎么做” “How to do”.

3. “往右拐”，“往”是一个介词，后边加上“右”组成词组“往右”，“往右”放在动词“拐”的前面，表示“拐”的方向。也可以说“往左拐”。

“往右拐”，“往” is a preposition, add “右” to it would form a phrase “往右”，“往右” placed before the verb “拐” indicates the direction of “拐”. We can also say “往左拐”.

4. “不客气”，是对别人表示感谢的一种回答。也说“不谢”。

“不客气”， is a kind of reply to other people's expression of gratitude. We can also say “不谢”.

#### IV. 练习： Exercise

1. 完成对话： Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 请问，银行在哪儿？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 怎么走？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 谢谢!

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 老师, 商店在前边吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 在马路右边吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 请再说一次。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 翻译: Translate

(1) 在左边      在右边      在前边      在旁边

(2) 往右拐      往左拐

(3) 怎么走      怎么读      怎么拐      怎么问

3. 选择正确的说法: Choose the correct statement

(1) The store is beside the bank.

a. 商店在旁边银行。

b. 商店在银行旁边。

c. 银行在商店旁边。

(2) The bank is on the right side.

a. 银行在马路左边。

b. 银行在马路右边。

c. 银行在左边马路。

d. 银行在右边马路。

(3) The store is on the right side too.

a. 也商店在马路右边。

b. 商店也在马路右边。

c. 商店在马路也右边。

d. 商店在马路右边也。

## V. 生词:      New words

- |         |           |     |              |
|---------|-----------|-----|--------------|
| 1. 问    | wèn       | (动) | ask, inquire |
| 2. 银行   | yínháng   | (名) | bank         |
| 3. 在    | zài       | (动) | exist        |
| 4. 哪儿   | nǎr       | (代) | where        |
| 5. 前边   | qiánbian  | (名) | ahead        |
| 6. 怎么   | zěnmē     | (代) | How          |
| 7. 走    | zǒu       | (动) | get, walk    |
| 8. 往    | wǎng      | (介) | to, toward   |
| 9. 右    | yòu       | (名) | right        |
| 右边      | yòubian   | (名) | rightside    |
| 10. 拐   | guǎi      | (动) | turn         |
| 11. 商店  | shāngdiàn | (名) | shop, store  |
| 12. 旁边  | pángbiān  | (名) | side         |
| 13. 马路  | mǎlù      | (名) | road         |
| 14. 左   | zuǒ       | (名) | left         |
| 左边      | zuǒbian   | (名) | leftside     |
| 15. 远   | yuǎn      | (形) | far, distant |
| 16. 谢谢  | xièxie    | (动) | Thank you    |
| 17. 客气  | kèqi      | (形) | courteous    |
| 18. 不客气 | bú kèqi   |     | discourteous |

## 4. 几点了      What's the time?

### I. 句型: Sentence

31. 现在几点?  
Xiànzài jǐ diǎn?  
What's the time now?
32. 现在三点。  
Xiànzài sān diǎn.  
It is three o'clock, now.
33. 现在九点了。  
Xiànzài jiǔ diǎn le.  
It is already nine o'clock.
34. 银行几点开门?  
Yínháng jǐ diǎn kāi mén?  
At what time does the bank open?
35. 五点十分。  
Wǔ diǎn shí fēn.  
Ten minutes past five o'clock.
36. 六点半。  
Liù diǎn bàn.  
Half past six.



37. 七点一刻。  
Qī diǎn yí kè.  
A quarter past seven o'clock.
38. 差一刻八点。  
Chà yí kè bā diǎn.  
A quarter to eight o'clock.
39. 今天是星期几?  
Jīntiān shì xīngqī jǐ?  
What day is today?
40. 今天是星期日。  
Jīntiān shì xīngqī rì.  
Today is Sunday.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

- A: 请问,现在几点了?  
Qǐng wèn, xiànzài jǐ diǎn le?  
May I ask, what is the time now?
- B: 现在八点。  
Xiànzài bā diǎn.  
It is eight o'clock now.
- A: 商店几点开门?  
Shāngdiàn jǐ diǎn kāi mén?  
At what time does the store open?

B: 商店八点半开门。

Shāngdiàn bā diǎn bàn kāi mén.

It opens at half past eight.

A: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

B: 不谢!

Bú xiè.

You're welcome!

(二)

A: 王红, 几点了?

Wáng Hóng, jǐ diǎn le?

Wang Hong, what is the time?

B: 差一刻九点。

Chà yí kè jiǔ diǎn.

A quarter to nine o'clock.

A: 今天是星期几?

Jīntiān shì xīngqī jǐ?

What day is today?

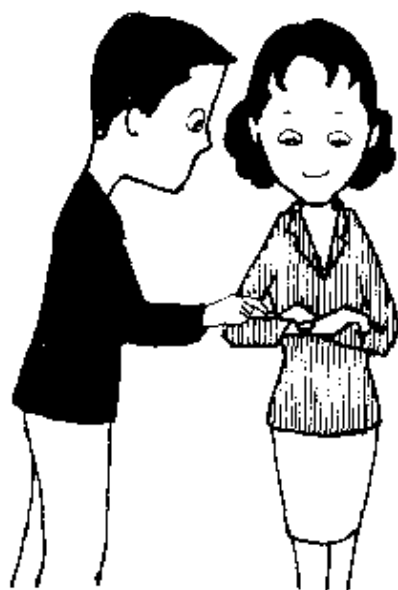
B: 今天是星期天。

Jīntiān shì xīngqītiān.

Today is Sunday.

A: 银行开门吗?

Yínháng kāi mén ma?



Will the bank open?

B: 银行开门。

Yínháng kāi mén.

It opens.

(三)

A: 今天是星期四吗?

Jīntiān shì xīngqīsì ma?

Is it Thursday today?

B: 今天不是星期四,是星期三。

Jīntiān bú shì xīngqīsì, shì xīngqīsān.

It is not Thursday, it is Wednesday.

A: 现在几点?

Xiànzài jǐ diǎn?

What is the time now?

B: 现在十一点一刻。

Xiànzài shíyī diǎn yī kè.

It is a quarter past eleven o'clock now.

A: 你说什么? 请再说一遍。

Nǐ shuō shénme? Qǐng zài shuō yí biàn.

What did you say? Please say it once again.

B: 现在是十一点十五分。

Xiànzài shì shíyī diǎn shíwǔ fēn.

It is eleven-fifteen now.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “几”,用来询问数字,多用于询问“十”以下的数字。

“几”,is used to inquire about numerals, It is more commonly used to inquire about numerals below “十”.

2. “九点了”,“了”用在句子末尾,不是表示动作完成,而是表示确定的语气。

“九点了”,“了” is used at the end of a sentence, not to express the completion of movements, but to express a definite manner of speaking.

3. 时间表示法: Indication of Time

5 : 00	五点	five o'clock
5 : 05	五点零五分	five minutes past five
5 : 10	五点十分	ten minutes past five
5 : 15	五点十五分	五点一刻 a quarter past five
5 : 30	五点三十分	五点半 half past five
5 : 45	五点四十五分	五点三刻 a quarter to six
5 : 55	五点五十五分	差五分六点 five minutes to six

4. 星期表示法: Indication of Week

星期一:	Monday
星期二:	Tuesday
星期三:	Wednesday
星期四:	Thursday
星期五:	Friday
星期六:	Saturday

星期日(天): Sunday

5. “星期日”多用于书面语,“星期天”多用于口语。

“星期日” is often used in written form.

“星期天” is often used in oral form.

#### IV. 练习: Exercise

1. 用汉语说出下列时间: Use Chinese to say out the following time:

(1) 7 : 00      8 : 00      11 : 00      12 : 00

(2) 1 : 06      3 : 14      5 : 25      8 : 47

(3) 1 : 15      5 : 15      10 : 45      11 : 45

(4) 1 : 30      4 : 30      6 : 30      10 : 30

2. 选择: Choose

(1) 三点半

a. 2 : 20      b. 5 : 15      c. 3 : 30      d. 6 : 45

(2) 四点十四分

a. 4 : 15      b. 8 : 14      c. 9 : 18      d. 4 : 14

(3) 五点一刻

a. 5 : 30      b. 5 : 15      c. 8 : 15      d. 8 : 30

(4) 差十分八点

a. 7 : 45      b. 8 : 10      c. 7 : 50      d. 8 : 50

3. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 请问, 银行在哪儿?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 现在几点了?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 银行开门了吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 今天是星期几?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我们今天上课吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 谢谢!

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

## V. 生词:      New words

1. 几	jǐ	(数)	how many
2. 点	diǎn	(名)	o'clock
3. 开	kāi	(动)	open
4. 门	mén	(名)	door
5. 分	fēn	(名)	minute
6. 半	bàn	(数)	half
7. 刻	kè	(名)	a quarter
8. 差	chà	(动)	short of
9. 今天	jīntiān	(名)	Today
10. 是	shì	(动)	is
11. 星期	xīngqī	(名)	week
12. 星期日(天)	xīngqīrì(tiān)	(名)	Sunday

附：Attach：

零	líng	zero
一	yī	one
二	èr	two
三	sān	three
四	sì	four
五	wǔ	five
六	liù	six
七	qī	seven
八	bā	eight
九	jiǔ	nine
十	shí	ten

## 5. 坐出租汽车      Taking a taxi

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

41. 有出租汽车吗?  
Yǒu chūzūqìchē ma?  
Is there any taxi available?
42. 有。您去哪儿?  
Yǒu. Nín qù nǎr?  
Yes. Where do you want to go?
43. 您要去什么地方?  
Nín yào qù shénme dìfang?  
Which place do you want to go to?
44. 对不起, 现在没有车。  
Duìbùqǐ, xiànzài méiyǒu chē.  
Sorry, there is no cars available.
45. 请等一会儿。  
Qǐng děng yíhuìr.  
Please wait for a while.
46. 我要去飞机场。  
Wǒ yào qù fēijīchǎng.  
I want to go to the airport.



47. 远不远?

Yuǎn bu yuǎn?

Is it far away?

48. 不太远,一会儿就到。

Bú tài yuǎn, yíhuìr jiù dào.

It is not too far away, we will get there in a while.

49. 太远了!

Tài yuǎn le!

It is too far away!

50. 请上车!

Qǐng shàng chē.

Please get on the car!

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 请问,有出租汽车吗?

Qǐng wèn, Yǒu chūzūqìchē ma?

Is there any taxi available?

B: 有,您去哪儿?

Yǒu. Nín qù nǎr?

Yes. Where do you want to go?

A: 我去银行。

Wǒ qù yínháng.

I want to go to the bank.

B: 请上车。

Qǐng shàng chē.

Please get on the car.

A: 谢谢! 去银行远不远?

Xièxie! Qù yínháng yuǎn bu yuǎn?

Thank you! Is it far away to get to the bank?

B: 不太远, 一会儿就到。

Bú tài yuǎn, yíhuìr jiù dào.

It is not very far away, we will get there in a while.

(二)

A: 请问, 有没有出租汽车?

Qǐng wèn, Yǒu méiyǒu chūzūqìchē?

May I ask, Is there any taxi around?

B: 有, 您要去什么地方?

Yǒu. Nín yào qù shénme dìfang?

Yes. Where do you want to go?

A: 我要去飞机场。

Wǒ yào qù fēijīchǎng.

I want to go to the airport.

B: 对不起, 我不去飞机场。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bu qù fēijīchǎng.

Sorry, I am not going to the airport.

A: 太远吗?

Tài yuǎn ma?



Is it far away?

B: 太远了。

Tài yuǎn le.

It is too far away.

(三)

A: 请问,去飞机场远不远?

Qǐng wèn, qù fēijīchǎng yuǎn bu yuǎn?

May I ask, is it far away to go to the airport?

B: 很远。

Hěn yuǎn.

It is very far away.

A: 有没有出租车?

Yǒu méiyǒu chūzūchē?

Is there any taxi around?

B: 对不起,现在没有车。

Duìbuqǐ, xiànzài méiyǒu chē.

Sorry, there is no taxi now.

A: 请再说一次。

Qǐng zài shuō yí cì.

Please say it once again.

A: 现在没车,请等一会儿。

Xiànzài méi chē, qǐng děng yíhuìr.

There is no taxi, Please wait for a while.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “有”,动词“有”的否定式是“没有”,如果“没有”后边带有宾语,可以省略“有”。如“没有车”,可以说成“没车”。

“有”, the negative form of verb “有” is “没有”, If an object follows “没有”, “有” can be left out. Like: “没有车” can be said as “没车”.

2. “您要去什么地方”,“什么”常常用在名词前表示询问,其他如“什么商店”、“什么银行”、“什么飞机场”、“什么练习”。

“您要去什么地方?” “什么” is often placed before nouns to express inquiry. Others like “什么商店”, “什么银行”, “什么飞机场”, “什么练习”.

3. “对不起”是一种常用的、表示道歉的礼貌用语。

“对不起” is a common phrase to express apologies in a courteous

manner.

4. “等一会儿”，“动词+一会儿”，表示动作持续的时间短。再如：“说一会儿”、“读一会儿”、“走一会儿”。

“等一会儿”，“动词+一会儿”， indicates that the time taken for a continuous movement is short. Like: “说一会儿” “Say for a while”, “读一会儿” “Read for a while”, “走一会儿” “walk for a while”.

5. “远不远”，形容词或动词的肯定形式与否定形式连用，构成汉语的另一种疑问式。如：“好不好”、“去不去”、“是不是”、“明白不明白”。

“远不远”，the combination of the positive and negative forms of adjectives or verbs make up another type of interrogative sentence in Chinese. Like: “好不好”，“去不去”，“是不是”，“明白不明白”。

6. “一会儿就到”，“就”是一个副词，用在动词前，表示动作很快就会发生。例如：“我就走”、“他就要去机场了。”

“一会儿就到”，“就”is an adverb, used before verbs to express that movements are going to take place very soon. For example: “我就走”，“他就要去机场了”。

7. “太……了”，“太+形容词+了”是一种固定格式，表示程度很高。如“太远了”、“太好了”、“太客气了”。

“太…了”，“太+形容词+了” is a fixed form to express that the degree or level is very high. Like“太远了” “It is too far”，“太好了” “It is too good”，“太客气了” “You’re too courteous”.

## IV 练习: Exercise

### 1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 请问, 有没有出租汽车?

B: 有, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我要去银行。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 去银行远吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 今天是不是星期五?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 太好了! 我们不上课。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我也要去商店。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

### 2. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

远不远 明白不明白 是不是 去不去 读不读 做不做 有没有

(1) 你 \_\_\_\_\_ 商店?

(2) 银行 \_\_\_\_\_ 八点开门?

(3) 我们 \_\_\_\_\_ 练习?

(4) 飞机场 \_\_\_\_\_ ?

(5) 同学们 \_\_\_\_\_ 生词?

(6) 王红 \_\_\_\_\_ 书?

(7) 今天 \_\_\_\_\_ 星期天?

(8) 现在没车,请等一会儿。你\_\_\_\_\_?

IV. 生词:      New words:

- |         |            |     |                     |
|---------|------------|-----|---------------------|
| 1. 有    | yǒu        | (动) | exist               |
| 2. 车    | chē        | (名) | car                 |
| 3. 出租汽车 | chūzūqìchē | (名) | taxi                |
| 4. 去    | qù         | (动) | go                  |
| 5. 对不起  | duìbuqǐ    |     | sorry               |
| 6. 没有   | méiyǒu     | (动) | have not            |
| 7. 等    | děng       | (动) | wait                |
| 8. 一会儿  | yīhuìr     | (名) | a while             |
| 9. 要    | yào        | (动) | want                |
| 10. 地方  | dìfang     | (名) | place               |
| 11. 飞机场 | fēijīchǎng | (名) | airport             |
| 12. 太   | tài        | (副) | too                 |
| 13. 就   | jiù        | (副) | at once, right away |
| 14. 到   | dào        | (动) | reach               |
| 15. 上   | shàng      | (动) | get on              |

## 6. 你住 507 号      your room is 507

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

51. 请问,有空房间吗?

Qǐng wèn, yǒu kòng fángjiān ma?

May I ask, is there any empty room available?

52. 有,您要几间?

Yǒu, nín yào jǐ jiān?

Yes, How many rooms do you want?

53. 现在没有,都住满了。

Xiànzài méiyǒu, dōu zhùmǎn le.

There is no room available now, all are full.

54. 我要两间。

Wǒ yào liǎng jiān.

I want two rooms.

55. 您要单人房间还是双人房间?

Nín yào dān rén fángjiān háishi shuāng rén fángjiān?

Do you want single room or double room?

56. 我要单(双)人房间。

Wǒ yào dān(shuāng)rén fángjiān.

I want single (double) room.



57. 请填登记表。

Qǐng tián dēngjìbiǎo.

Please fill in the registration form.

58. 您的房间是 507 号。

Nín de fángjiān shì wǔ líng qī hào.

Your room is Room 507.

59. 这是钥匙。

Zhè shì yàoshi.

This is the key.

60. 请跟我走。

Qǐng gēn wǒ zǒu.

Please follow me.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 请问,有空房间吗?

Qǐng wèn, yǒu kòng fángjiān ma?

May I ask, is there any empty rooms available?

B: 有,你要几间?

Yǒu, nǐ yào jǐ jiān?

Yes, How many rooms do you want?

A: 我要一间。

Wǒ yào yì jiān.

I want one room.

B: 单人房间还是双人房间?

Dān rén fángjiān háishi shuāng rén fángjiān?

Is it single room or double room?

A: 单人房间。

Dān rén fángjiān.

Single room.

B: 您的房间是 325 号。

Nín de fángjiān shì sān èr wǔ hào.

Your room is Room 325.

A: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

## (二)

A: 请问, 有没有空房间?

Qǐng wèn, yǒu méiyǒu kòng fángjiān?

May I ask, is there any empty rooms around?

B: 有双人房间, 没有单人房间。

Yǒu shuāng rén fángjiān, méiyǒu dān rén fángjiān.

There are double rooms, but no single rooms.

A: 太好了! 我要双人房间。

Tài hǎo le! Wǒ yào shuāng rén fángjiān.

Great! I want a double room.

B: 请填登记表。

Qǐng tián dēngjìbiǎo.

Please fill in the registration form.

A: 好。

Hǎo.

All right.

B: 这是您的钥匙,请跟我走。

Zhè shì nín de yàoshi,  
qǐng gēn wǒ zǒu.

This is your key, please  
follow me.

A: 谢谢!

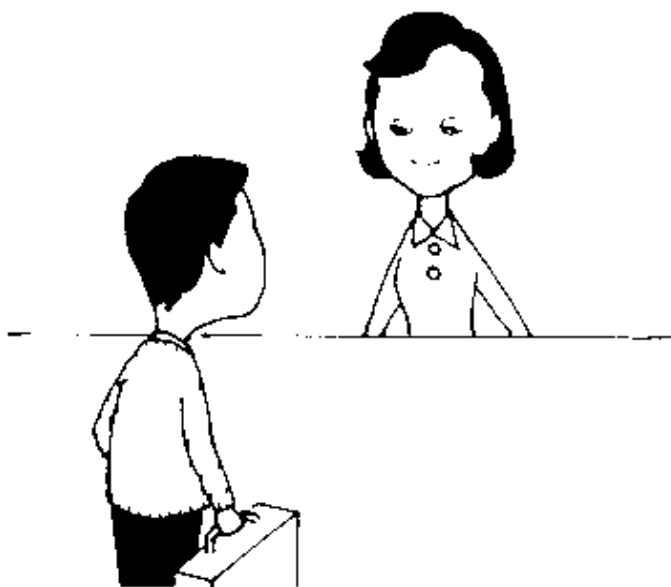
Xièxie!

Thank you!

B: 不客气

Bú kèqi.

You're welcome.



(三)

A: 您要房间吗?

Nín yào fángjiān ma?

Do you want any room?

B: 是,我要一间单人房间。

Shì, wǒ yào yì jiān dān rén fángjiān.

Yes, I want a single room.

A: 对不起,单人房间都住满了。

Duìbuqǐ, dān rén fángjiān dōu zhù mǎn le.

Sorry, Single rooms are all full.

B: 有双人房间吗?

Yǒu shuāng rén fángjiān ma?

Is there any double room?

A: 有。

Yǒu.

Yes.

B: 太好了! 我要一间。

Tài hǎo le! Wǒ yào yì jiān.

Great! I want one.

A: 您的房间在前边, 往右拐。

Nín de fángjiān zài qiánbian, wǎng yòu guǎi.

Your room is just ahead, turn to the right.

B: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

### III. 注释: Annotation

1. “都住满了”, “住满”是一个结果补语式。形容词“满”出现在“住”后, 表明结果。

“都住满了”, “住满”is in the resultant complement mood. The adjective “满” appears after “住” to show the result.

2. “我要两间”, 注意, 汉语的习惯说法是“两间”、“两点”, 不说“二间”、“二点”。

“我要两间”, take note, the usual saying in Chinese is “两间”、“两点”, not “二间”, “二点”.

3. “单人房间还是双人房间”, “还是”构成汉语的选择问句。“还是”前后可以是名词(单人房间还是双人房间)、动词(去还是不去)、形容词(明白还是不明白),也可以是句子(你去还是我去)。

“单人房间还是双人房间”, “还是” forms the selective sentences in Chinese. “还是” can have nouns, verbs, adjectives or even sentences before or after it. eg; nouns (单人房间还是双人房间), verbs (去还是不去), adjectives (客气还是不客气), sentences (你去还是我去), it is almost equivalent to “or”.

4. “您的房间”, “的”是一个助词,表示领属关系。再如“我的书”、“他的钥匙”、“我们的老师”。

“您的房间”, “的” is a particle indicating the possessive relation. Like: “我的书” “My book”, “他的钥匙” “His key”, “我们的老师” “Our teacher”.

5. “跟我走”, “跟”是一个介词,后面加表示人的名词或代词,再加动词。

“跟我走”, “跟” is a preposition, placed before pronouns or nouns which indicate people, followed by verbs.

6. “好”,是个常用的应答用语,表示同意。

“好”, is a phrase commonly used as an answer or a reply which indicates agreement.

7. “一间单人房间”, “间”是个量词。汉语的数词和名词之间必须有量词,什么名词要求什么量词是确定的。

“一间单人房间”, “间” is a measure word, in Chinese, measure word is needed between a numeral and a noun, It is set as to

what measure words should be used with what nouns.

## IV. 练习: Exercise

### 1. 用“还是”把下列各组词分别连成句子。

Use “还是” to put the following phrases together

- (1) 你 去 商店 银行
- (2) 我 读 课文 生词
- (3) 你 要 单人房间 双人房间
- (4) 商店 在 马路左边 马路右边
- (5) 今天 是 星期六 星期天
- (6) 商店 开门 不开门
- (7) 我们 往左拐 往右拐
- (8) 你去 我去

### 2. 翻译: Translation

- (1) 这是我的书。
- (2) 我们的老师去飞机场了。
- (3) 您的房间在前边,往左拐。
- (4) 这是不是他的钥匙?
- (5) 对不起,我们没有空房间了。
- (6) 对不起,房间都住满了。

### 3. 选择正确答案: Choose the correct answer

- (1) A: 请问,有空房间吗?  
B: a. 有,您要几间?      b. 对不起,有。      c. 这是钥匙。
- (2) A: 您要几间?

- B: a. 我要二间。      b. 我要两间。      c. 我要双人房间。
- (3) A: 您要单人房间还是双人房间?  
 B: a. 我要三间。      b. 我要单人房间。      c. 我要双人房间。
- (4) A: 您的房间是 121 号,请跟我走。  
 B: a. 不客气。      b. 太好了。      c. 谢谢!

## V. 生词: New words

1. 空	kòng	(形)	empty
2. 房间	fángjiān	(名)	room
3. 间	jiān	(量)	<i>measure word</i>
4. 住	zhù	(动)	stay, reside
5. 满	mǎn	(形)	full
6. 两	liǎng	(数)	two
7. 单	dān	(形)	single
8. 人	rén	(人)	people
9. 双	shuāng	(形)	double
10. 还是	háishi	(连)	or
11. 填	tián	(动)	fill
12. 登记表	dēngjì bǐbiǎo	(名)	registration form
13. 的	de	(助)	<i>particle</i>
14. 号	hào	(名)	number
15. 这	zhè	(代)	this
16. 钥匙	yàoshi	(名)	key
17. 跟	gēn	(介)	follow

## 7. 拜访老师      Visiting the teacher

### 1. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

61. 我想去拜访您。  
Wǒ xiǎng qù bài fǎng nín.  
I want to go and visit you.
62. 什么时间对您合适?  
Shénme shíjiān duì nín héshì?  
What time is appropriate for you?
63. 您什么时间有空儿?  
Nín shénme shíjiān yǒu kòngr?  
At what time are you free?
64. 星期六和星期天都行。  
Xīngqīliù hé xīngqītiān dōu xíng.  
Saturdays and Sundays are all OK.
65. 我星期五晚上去,可以吗?  
Wǒ xīngqīwǔ wǎnshàng qù kěyǐ ma?  
Can I come on Friday night?
66. 行。  
Xíng.  
Sure.



67. 不行,我有事。

Bùxíng, wǒ yǒu shì.

No, I have got something to do.

68. 我们七点半去吧?

Wǒmen qī diǎn bàn qù ba?

We would come at seven-thirty, is it all right?

69. 我等您。

Wǒ děng nín.

I would wait for you.

70. 再见。

Zàijiàn.

See you then.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(打电话 Making a phone call)

A: 老师,您好!

Lǎoshī, nín hǎo!

Hello! Teacher.

B: 你好,王红。

Nǐ hǎo, Wáng Hóng.

Hello, Wang Hong.

A: 我想去拜访您,可以吗?

Wǒ xiǎng qù bài fǎng nín, kě yǐ ma?

I want to go and visit you, is it all right?

B: 欢迎。

Huānyíng.

Welcome.

A: 您什么时候有空儿?

Nín shéme shíjiān yǒu kòngr.

At what time are you free?

B: 今天下午和晚上都可以。

Jīntiān xiàwǔ hé wǎnshang dōu kěyǐ.

This afternoon and evening time are both OK.

A: 我今天晚上去您家。

Wǒ jīntiān wǎnshang

qù nín jiā.

I would go to your  
place tonight.

B: 可以, 我等你。

Kěyǐ, wǒ děng nǐ.

All right, I would  
wait for you.

A: 再见!

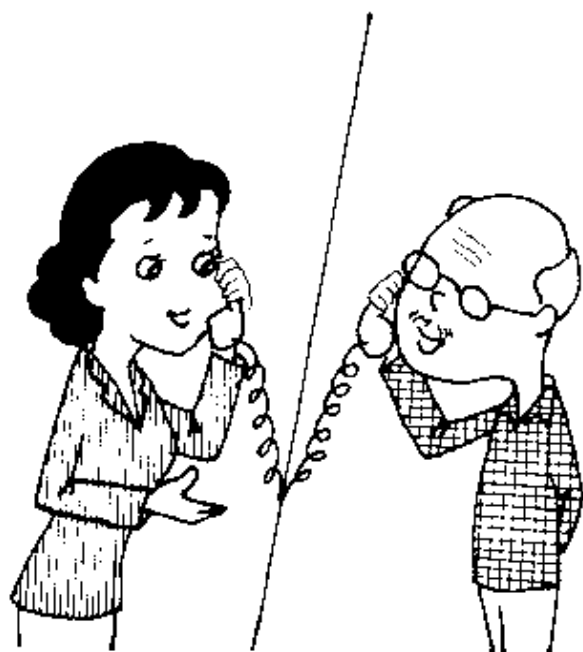
Zàijiàn!

Goodbye!

B: 再见!

Zàijiàn!

See you then!



(二)

A: 大卫,我想去拜访老师。

Dàwèi, wǒ xiǎng qù bài fǎng lǎoshī.

David, I want to go and visit our teacher.

B: 我也想去。

Wǒ yě xiǎng qù.

I would want to go too.

A: 我们什么时间去?

Wǒmen shénme shíjiān qù?

At what time should we go?

B: 什么时间对老师合适?

Shénme shíjiān duì lǎoshī héshì?

What time is appropriate for the teacher?

A: 老师说,晚上她都在家。

Lǎoshī shuō, wǎnshang tā dōu zài jiā.

The teacher says, she would be at home in the evening.

B: 不行,晚上我有事,我要上课。

Bù xíng, wǎnshang wǒ yǒu shì, wǒ yào shàng kè.

No, I have got something to do in the evening, I have to go to class.

A: 星期六晚上呢?

Xīngqīliù wǎnshang ne?

What about Saturday night?

B: 星期六晚上可以,我没有事。

Xīngqīliù wǎnshang kěyǐ, wǒ méiyǒu shì.

Saturday night would be all right, I'm free.

A: 我们七点半走吧?

Wǒmen qī diǎn bàn zǒu ba?

We would go at half past seven, is it all right?

B: 好,我在家等你,我们一起走。

Hǎo, wǒ zài jiā děng nǐ, wǒmen yìqǐ zǒu.

All right, I would wait for you at home, We would go together.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “对您合适”,“对”是一个介词。作用是介绍出动作或行动的对象,也说“对他很客气”、“对他很好”、“对他说”。

“对您合适”,“对” is a preposition. Its purpose is to introduce the movement or the object of movement. Like: “对他很客气”, “对他很好”,“对他说”. It is almost equivalent to “to”.

2. “行”和“可以”,它们都可以单独回答问题。“行”用于口语,“可以”用于书面语。“可以”还可以用于动词前。如:“我可以去拜访您吗?”

“行”and “可以”, they can be used to answer questions independently. “行” is used in oral form, “可以” is used in written form “可以” can be used before verbs. Like: “我可以去拜访您吗?”.

3. “我想去拜访您,可以吗?”在一个陈述句的后边加上“可以吗?”也可以构成一种问句,表示征求对方意见。“……,行吗?”“……,好吗?”也可以构成同类疑问句。如:“你再说一遍,行

吗?”“我们七点半走,好吗?”

“我想去拜访您,可以吗?”To include “可以吗”after declarative sentences can form a question which is to express asking of opinions from the other party. “...,行吗?”“...好吗?” can also form this kind of question. Like: “你再说一遍,行吗?”“我们七点半走,好吗?”.

4. “我们七点半走吧”,“吧”是一个语气词,用在句尾表示疑问。和“吗”不同的是,用“吧”时说话人已有基本看法,只是想证实一下。比较:

今天是星期日吗?

今天是星期日吧?

“我们七点半走吧?”“吧” is an auxiliary word that indicates mood, used at the end of sentences to express enquiry. The difference with “吗”is, “吧”is used when the speaker has got a basic idea, what to say its purpose is to make sure. Compare: “今天是星期日吗?”“今天是星期日吗?”.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 读下列对话,并翻译成英文: Read the following dialogues, translate them into English.

(1) A: 王红,你有空吗?

B: 有,什么事?

A: 我想去银行。

B: 今天是星期天,银行不开门。

(2) A: 我们去商店,好吗?

B: 好。商店远不远?

A: 不太远, 一会儿就到。

B: 我和你一起去。

(3) A: 你晚上有事吗?

B: 没事。

A: 我们一起去拜访老师吧?

B: 可以。

(4) A: 大卫, 你星期天在家吗?

B: 在家, 欢迎你!

A: 什么时间对您合适?

B: 下午和晚上都可以。

2. 把下列句子变成疑问句:      To change the following sentences  
to interrogative sentences

(1) 今天是星期一。

(2) 现在两点。

(3) 我去商店。

(4) 我想下午去您家。

(5) 单人房间和双人房间都可以。

(6) 我晚上有空。

(7) 飞机场不太远。

(8) 我们一起去拜访老师。

3. 按下列要求造出疑问句:      Make interrogative sentences with  
the following requirements

(1) 用“吗”

(2) 用“吧”

(3) 用“呢”

- (4) 用“还是”
- (5) 用“……, 可以吗”
- (6) 用“是不是”
- (7) 用“有没有”
- (8) 用“哪儿”
- (9) 用“什么”
- (10) 用“几”

## V. 生词:      New words

- |        |          |     |                       |
|--------|----------|-----|-----------------------|
| 1. 想   | xiǎng    | (动) | think, want           |
| 2. 拜访  | bàifǎng  | (动) | visit                 |
| 3. 时间  | shíjiān  | (名) | time                  |
| 4. 对   | duì      | (介) | to                    |
| 5. 合适  | héshì    | (形) | suitable              |
| 6. 空儿  | kòngr    | (名) | free, empty           |
| 7. 和   | hé       | (连) | and                   |
| 8. 行   | xíng     | (动) | sure, all right       |
| 9. 可以  | kěyǐ     | (动) | can                   |
| 10. 晚上 | wǎnshang | (名) | night                 |
| 11. 事  | shì      | (名) | matter                |
| 12. 吧  | ba       | (助) | <i>particle</i>       |
| 13. 再见 | zàijiàn  | (动) | see you then, goodbye |
| 14. 欢迎 | huānyíng | (动) | welcome               |
| 15. 下午 | xiàwǔ    | (名) | afternoon             |
| 16. 家  | jiā      | (名) | home                  |
| 17. 一起 | yìqǐ     | (副) | together              |

## 8. 买橘子      To buy tangerines

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

71. 您要什么?

Nín yào shénme?

What do you want?

72. 您买一点儿什么?

Nín mǎi yìdiǎnr shénme?

What do you want to buy?

73. 我要(买)十个橘子。

Wǒ yào (mǎi)shí ge júzi.

I want (to buy) ten tangerines.

74. 还要别的吗?

Hái yào biéde ma?

Do you want to buy anything else?

75. 还要两瓶牛奶和一个面包。

Hái yào liǎng píng niú'nǎi hé yì ge miànbāo.

I want two bottles of milk and a loaf of bread.

76. 不要了。

Bú yào le.

No more.



77. 一共多少钱?

Yígòng duōshao qián?

How much is it altogether?

78. 五块八毛二。

Wǔ kuài bā máo èr.

Five dollars and eighty-two cents.

79. 太贵了。

Tài guì le.

It is too expensive.

80. 不贵,很便宜。

Bú guì, hěn piányi.

It is not expensive, it is very cheap.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 您好,您要点儿什么?

Nín hǎo, nín yào diǎnr shénme?

Hello, what do you want to buy?

B: 我要两个面包。

Wǒ yào liǎng ge miànbāo.

I want two loaves of bread.

A: 还要别的吗?

Hái yào biéde ma?

Do you want anything else?

B: 还要一瓶牛奶。

Hái yào yì píng niú'nǎi.

And a bottle of milk.

A: 一共多少钱?

Yí gòng duōshao qián?

How much is it altogether?

B: 请等一下儿,一共两块三毛五。

Qǐng děng yíxiàr, yí gòng liǎng kuài sān máo wǔ.

Please wait a moment, it is two dollars and thirty-five cents altogether.

A: 很便宜。

Hěn piányi.

It is very cheap.

B: 是的,牛奶和面包都不贵。

Shìde, niú'nǎi hé miànbāo dōu bù guì.

Yes, milk and bread are not too expensive.

(二)

A: 请问,您要买什么?

Qǐng wèn, nín yào mǎi shénme?

May I ask, what do you want to buy?

B: 我买橘子和苹果。

Wǒ mǎi júzi hé píngguǒ.

I want to buy tangerines and apples.

A: 您买多少?

Nín mǎi duōshao?

How many do you want to buy?

B: 我买五个橘子,五个苹果。

Wǒ mǎi wǔ ge júzi, wǔ ge píngguǒ.

I want to buy five tangerines and five apples.



A: 还要别的吗?

Hái yào biéde ma?

Do you want anything else?

B: 不要了。

Bú yào le.

No more.

A: 一共十块两毛八。

Yí gòng shí kuài liǎng máo bā.

It is ten dollars and twenty-eight cents altogether.

B: 太贵了!

Tài guì le!

It is too expensive!

### (三) 去商店      Going to the store

今天是星期六,王红不上课。她要去商店,她想买牛奶和面包。她问大卫去不去。

Jīntiān shì xīngqīliù, Wáng Hóng bú shàng kè. Tā xiǎng qù shāngdiàn, tā xiǎng mǎi niú'nǎi hé miànbāo. Tā wèn Dàwèi qù bú qù.

大卫说,他也想去商店,他要买橘子和苹果。商店 8 点 30 开门。差一刻九点,他们一起去商店了。

Dàwèi shuō, tā yě xiǎng qù shāngdiàn, tā yào mǎi júzi hé píngguǒ. Shāngdiàn bā diǎn sānshí kāi mén. Chà yí kè jiǔ diǎn, tāmen yìqǐ qù shāngdiàn le.

Today is Sunday, WangHong does not have to go to class. She wants to go to the store. She wants to buy milk and bread. She asks David if he is going. David says, he wants to go to the store too, he wants to buy tangerines and apples. The store opens at half past eight. A quarter to nine o'clock, they go to the store together.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “一点儿”,“一点儿”表示数量少,常在名词前作定语。如“买一点橘子”、“有一点事”。“一点儿”的“一”常常省略,如“买点儿橘子”。

“一点儿”,“一点儿” is to express a small quantity, usually used as the attributive before nouns. Like: “买一点橘子”,“有一点儿事”。“一” is often left out in “一点儿”, Like: “买点儿橘子”。

2. “还要别的吗?”,“别的”是“别的东西”的省略说法。“别的”常用在名词前,如:“别的地方”、“别的时间”、“别的商店”。

“还要别的吗?”“别的” is the elliptical way of saying “别的东西”,“别的” is often used before nouns, like: “别的地方” “other places”, “别的时间” “other time”, “别的商店” “other stores”。

3. “多少钱”,“多少”用在名词前,询问数量。“多少人”、“多少同学”、“多少橘子”。

“多少钱”,“多少” is used before nouns to inquire about quantity. “多少人” “How many people”, “多少同学” “How many classmates”, “多少橘子” “How many tangerines”。

4. “五块八毛二”,汉语的钱数有两种表达法,“块、毛、分”是口语形式,“元(yuán)、角(jiǎo)、分”是书面形式。最后一位的“毛”或“分”可以省去不说。如“五元八角二分”、“五元八角”常说成“五块八毛二”、“五块八”。

“五块八毛二”, in Chinese there are two ways to express monetary amounts, “块、毛、分” is the oral form, “元、角、分” is the written form. The last one “毛” or “分” can be left out Like: “五元八角二分”, “五元八角” is often said as “五元八角二”,

“五元八”。

5. “是的”，是个常用语，表示肯定。

“是的”，is a common phrase, to express the positive meaning.

#### IV. 练习： Exercise

1. 选词填空： Fill in the following blanks.

也 都 还

(1) 我要买面包，他( )要买面包。

(2) 单人房间和双人房间( )住满了。

(3) 今天我要去银行，( )要去商店。

(4) 你( )去别的地方吗？

(5) 请你们( )跟我读生词。

(6) 你住 215 号，他( )住 215 号，你们( )住 215 号。

(7) 大卫买牛奶，( )要面包。

2. 用汉语读出下列钱数： Use Chinese to read out the following monetary amounts.

3.80 元    4.07 元    1.32 元    45.52 元

10.08 元    9.40 元    0.58 元    21.99 元

3. 完成对话： Complete the following dialogues.

(1) A: 你要什么？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 还要别的吗？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 三块五毛二。

(2) A: 橘子好不好?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 贵吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我要点。

## V. 生词: New words

1. 买	mǎi	(动)	buy
2. 一点儿	yìdiǎnr		a little
3. 个	gè	(量)	measure word
4. 橘子	júzi	(名)	tangerine
5. 还	hái	(副)	still, also
6. 别的	biéde	(代)	others
7. 瓶	píng	(名)	bottle
8. 牛奶	niúniǎi	(名)	milk
9. 面包	miànbāo	(名)	bread
10. 一共	yíòng	(副)	altogether
11. 多少	duōshao	(数)	how much
12. 钱	qián	(名)	money
13. 块(元)	kuài(yuán)	(名)	yuan
14. 毛(角)	máo(jiǎo)	(名)	mao
15. 贵	guì	(形)	expensive
16. 便宜	piányi	(形)	cheap
17. 一下儿	yíxiar		a moment
18. 他们	tāmen	(代)	they

## 9. 下雨了      It is raining

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

81. 今天天气怎么样?  
Jīntiān tiānqì zěnmeyàng?  
How is today's weather?
82. 外面冷(热)不冷(热)?  
Wàimiàn lěng(rè) bu lěng(rè)?  
Is it cold(hot)out side?
83. 今天天气很好。  
Jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo.  
Today's weather is very good.
84. 今天是晴天,太阳很好。  
Jīntiān shì qíngtiān,tàiyáng hěn hǎo.  
Today is a sunny day, the sun is bright.
85. 今天是阴天,要下雨了。  
Jīntiān shì yīntiān,yào xià yǔ le.  
Today is a cloudy day, It is going to rain.
86. 外面下雨了。  
Wàimiàn xià yǔ le.  
It is raining outside.



87. 刮风了。  
Guā fēng le.  
The wind is blowing.
88. 风特别大。  
Fēng tèbié dà.  
The wind is particularly strong.
89. 今天冷极了。  
Jīntiān lěng jí le.  
Today is extremely cold.
90. 不冷也不热。  
Bù lěng yě bu rè.  
Not too cold and not too hot.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

- A: 今天天气怎么样?  
Jīntiān tiānqì zěnmeyàng?  
How is today's weather?
- B: 很好, 不冷也不热。  
Hěn hǎo, bù lěng yě bu rè.  
Very good, not too cold and not too hot.
- A: 有风吗?  
Yǒu fēng ma?  
Is there any wind?

B: 没有风,太阳好极了。

Méiyǒu fēng,tàiyáng hǎo jí le.

There is no wind, the sun is extremely bright.

A: 太好了! 我们一起去商店吧。

Tài hǎo le! Wǒmen yìqǐ qù shāngdiàn ba.

Great! We would go to the store together.

B: 好。

Hǎo.

All right.

(二)

A: 外面下雨了吗?

Wàimiàn xià yǔ le ma?

Is it raining outside?

B: 是的,下雨了。

Shìde, xià yǔ le.

Yes, it is raining.

A: 雨大吗?

Yǔ dà ma?

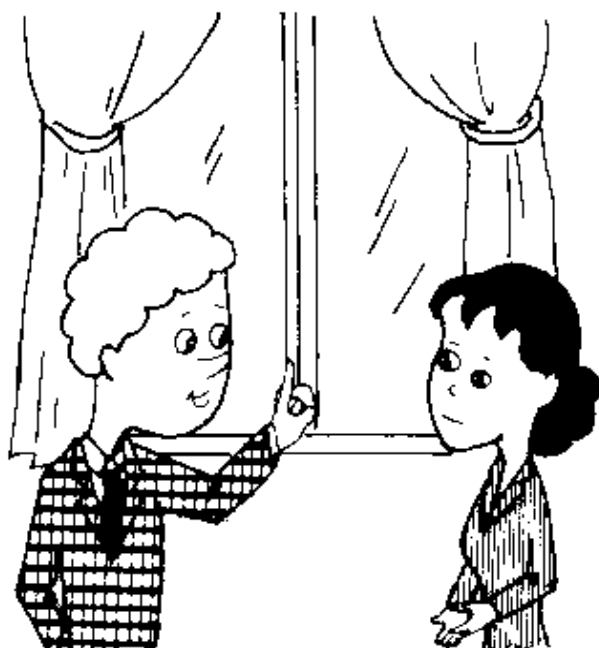
Is the rain heavy?

B: 雨特别大。

Yǔ tèbié dà.

The rain is particularly heavy.

A: 也刮风了吧?



Yě guā fēng le ba?

Is the wind blowing too?

B: 也刮风了,风也特别大。

Yě guā fēng le, fēng yě tèbié dà.

The wind is blowing too, it is particularly strong.

### (三) 天气不好

#### The weather is not good

今天天气不太好,是个阴天,下雨了,也刮风了。雨特别大,风也特别大。外面冷极了。

Jīntiān tiānqì bú tài hǎo, shì ge yīntiān, xià yǔ le, yě guā fēng le. Yǔ tèbié dà, fēng yě tèbié dà. Wàimian lěng jí le.

王红想去拜访老师,大卫说,“外面下雨了,晚上再去吧。”王红说:“好,现在我们在家读书。”

Wáng Hóng xiǎng qù bài fǎng lǎoshī, Dàwèi shuō: “Wàimian xià yǔ le, wǎnshang zài qù ba.” Wáng Hóng shuō: “Hǎo, xiànzài wǒmen zài jiā dú shū.”

Today's weather is not too good, is a cloudy day, is raining, the wind is blowing too. The rain is particularly strong too. It is extremely cold outside.

Wang Hong wants to go and visit her teacher, David says: “it is raining outside, why not go in the evening?” Wang Hong says: “All right, we will stay at home reading now.”

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “怎么样”,是常用的疑问词之一,用来提问谓语。

“怎么样” is one of the commonly used interrogative sentences.  
It is used to question the predicate.

如:你的房间怎么样?	Like:How is your room?
这个商店怎么样:	How is the store?
你们的老师怎么样?	How is you teacher?
天气怎么样?	How is the weather?

2. “要下雨了”,“要……了”表示动作将要发生。

“要下雨了”,“要…了” indicates that the action is going to take place or happen.

如:要下雨了	Like: It is going to rain.
要刮风了	The wind is going to blow.
要上课了	The class is going to start.
要开门了	The door is going to be opened.

3. “冷极了”,“形容词+极了”,表示程度很高。

“冷极了”,“adjective+极了”, express that the degree or level is very high, to the extreme.

如:热极了	Like: It is extremely hot.
远极了	It is extremely far.
贵极了	It is extremely expensive.

## IV. 练习: Exercises

### 1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

- (1) A: 今天天气好不好? (2) A: 外面下雨了吧?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
A: 风大吗? A: 冷不冷?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。 B: \_\_\_\_\_。
- (3) A: \_\_\_\_\_? (4) A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 很好,不冷也不热。 B: 是的,外面刮风了。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_? A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 没有风。 B: 风大极了。

### 2. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

- (1) 这个商店的苹果\_\_\_\_\_极了。  
a. 热 b. 贵 c. 远 d. 合适
- (2) 今天天气不太好,风\_\_\_\_\_极了。  
a. 冷 b. 好 c. 大 d. 热
- (3) 今天是阴天,要\_\_\_\_\_了。  
a. 刮风 b. 冷 c. 下雨 d. 好

## V. 生词: New words

1. 天气 tiānqì (名) weather  
2. 怎么样 zěnmeyàng (代) how  
3. 外面 wàimiàn (名) outside

4. 冷	lěng	(形)	cold
5. 热	rè	(形)	hot
6. 晴天	qíngtiān	(名)	sunny day
7. 太阳	tàiyáng	(名)	sun
8. 阴天	yīntiān	(名)	cloudy day
9. 要	yào	(助动)	want
10. 下(雨)	xià(yǔ)	(动)	to rain
11. 刮	guā	(动)	blow
12. 风	fēng	(名)	wind, gale
13. 特别	tèbié	(形)	particularly
14. 大	dà	(形)	strong
15. 极	jí	(副)	extremely

## 10. 我头疼      I have a headache

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

91. 你身体怎么样?

Nǐ shēntǐ zěnmeyàng?

How is your health?

92. 他身体很好,什么病也没有。

Tā shēntǐ hěn hǎo, shénme bìng yě méiyǒu.

His health is very good. He has got no illness.

93. 他很健康。

Tā hěn jiànkāng.

He is very healthy.

94. 她身体很不错。

Tā shēntǐ hěn búcuò.

Her health is not bad.

95. 我不太舒服。

Wǒ bú tài shūfu.

I am not feeling very well.

96. 我感冒了,头很疼。

Wǒ gǎnmào le, tóu hěn téng.

I have got a flu, the head hurts badly.

97. 他病了。  
Tā bìng le.  
He is sick.
98. 我肚子有点儿疼。  
Wǒ dùzi yǒudiǎnr téng.  
My stomach is aching slightly.
99. 你应该去医院。  
Nǐ yīnggāi qù yīyuàn.  
You should go to the hospital.
100. 我需要休息。  
Wǒ xūyào xiūxi.  
I need rest.

## II. 课文: Text (一)

A: 老王,你身体怎么样?

Lǎo Wáng, nǐ shēntǐ zěnmeyàng?

Lao Wang, How is your health?

B: 我身体很好,什么病也没有。你呢?

Wǒ shēntǐ hěn hǎo, shénme bìng yě méiyǒu. Nǐ ne?

My health is very good, I've got no illness. What about you?

A: 我身体也不错。

Wǒ shēntǐ yě búcuò.

My health is not bad either.

B: 外面下雨了,天气很冷。

Wàimian xià yǔ le, tiānqì hěn lěng.



It is raining outside, It is very cold.

A: 是,今天特别冷。

Shì, jīntiān tèbié lěng.

Yes, it's extremely cold today.

B: 你不舒服吗?

Nǐ bù shūfu ma?

Are you feeling unwell?

A: 不,没有。

Bù, méiyǒu.

No, I am not.

(二)

A: 你是不是不舒服?

Nǐ shì bú shì bù shūfu?

Are you really feeling unwell?

B: 我有点儿头疼。

Wǒ yǒu diǎnr tóu téng.

I have got a slight headache.

A: 你病了吧? 今天冷极了。

Nǐ bìng le ba? Jīntiān lěng jí le.

Are you sick? Today is extremely cold.

B: 是的,我有点儿感冒。

Shìde, wǒ yǒudiǎnr gǎnmào.

Yes, I have got a cold.

A: 你应该去医院,你需要休息。

Nǐ yīnggāi qù yīyuàn, nǐ xūyào xiūxi.

You should go to the hospital, you need rest.

B: 谢谢! 我等一会儿就去。

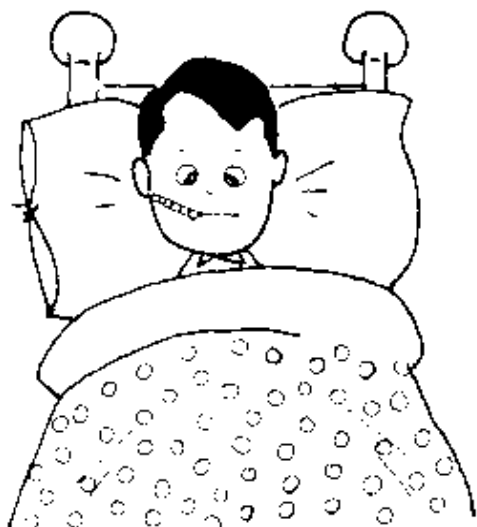
Xièxie! Wǒ děng yíhuìr jiù qù.

Thank you! I would go in a while.

### (三) 我病了 I am sick

我身体很健康, 什么病也没有。可是今天我有点不舒服, 头很疼, 肚子也有点疼。我病了, 感冒了。老师说, 我应该去医院。我说, 我不去医院, 我需要休息。

wǒ shēntǐ hěn jiànkāng, shénme bìng yě méiyǒu. Kěshì jīntiān wǒ yǒudiǎnr bù shūfu, tóu hěn téng, dùzi yě yǒudiǎnr téng. Wǒ bìng le, gǎnmào le. Lǎoshī shuō, wǒ yīnggāi qù yīyuàn. Wǒ shuō, wǒ bú yào qù yīyuàn, wǒ xūyào xiūxi.



I am very healthy, I have got no illness. However, I am not feeling very well today, my head hurts badly, my stomach is aching slightly. I am sick, down with a flu. My Teacher says, I should go to the hospital. I say, I do not want to go to the hospital, I need rest.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “什么病也没有”,“什么……也”强调全部如此,没有例外,常用在否定句中,如果是肯定句,用“什么……都”句型。如:“你什么时间来都行。”

“什么病也没有”,“什么…也”emphasize all are the same, there is no exception, usually used in negative sentences. If it is a positive sentence, use “什么…都…”sentence pattern. Like:“你什么时间来都行”.

2. “有点儿”,常用在形容词、动词前边,表示程度轻。“有点儿”也说成“有(一)点儿”。例如:“有点儿远”、“有点儿贵”、“有一点儿疼”。

“有点儿”, often used before adjectives and verbs to express the level or degree is of lesser importance. “有点儿”can be said as “有(一)点儿”. Example:“有点儿远” “It is slightly far”“有点儿贵” “It is slightly expensive”, “有一点儿疼” “It hurts slightly”.

3. “应该”,“应该”是一个助动词,后面要加动词或动词性词组。

“应该”, “应该” is an auxiliary verb, verbs or verbal phrases are required after the auxiliary verb.

如:应该去商店。 Like: Should go to the store

应该跟我走。

Should follow me

应该往右拐。

Should turn to the right

#### IV. 练习: Exercise

1. 用线段连接合适的词组: Use lines to join the suitable phrases together

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| A. 外面下雨了 | 有点儿贵     |
| 去飞机场     | 天气有点儿冷   |
| 他感冒了     | 有点儿头疼    |
| 双人房间     | 有点儿远     |
| B. 去银行   | 应该去医院    |
| 八点了      | 我应该去拜访老师 |
| 今天是星期六   | 应该去上课了   |
| 我有点儿头疼   | 应该往左拐    |

2. 翻译: Translate into Chinese

- (1) Lao Wang is particularly healthy, He has got no illness.
- (2) I am feeling not very well today, I do not wish to go anywhere.
- (3) Sorry, there is no room available now.
- (4) I am free on Sunday, You can come at any time.
- (5) He buys any book.

#### V. 生词: New words

1. 身体 shēntǐ (名) health

2. 病	bìng	(动)	sick
3. 健康	jiànkāng	(形)	healthy
4. 不错	búcuò	(形)	no too bad
5. 舒服	shūfu	(形)	comfortable
6. 感冒	gǎnmào	(动)	flu, influenza
7. 头	tóu	(名)	head
8. 疼	téng	(动)	hurt
9. 有点儿	yǒudiǎnr		slightly, a little
10. 肚子	dùzi	(名)	stomach
11. 应该	yīnggāi	(动)	should
12. 医院	yīyuàn	(名)	hospital
13. 需要	xūyào	(动)	need
14. 休息	xiūxi	(动)	rest
15. 可是	kěshì	(连)	however
16. 老王	Lǎo Wáng		Lao Wang

## 11. 喝茶      Drinking tea

### 1. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

101. 请喝茶!

Qǐng hē chá.

Please drink tea!

102. 我喜欢喝啤酒。

Wǒ xǐhuan hē píjiǔ.

I like to drink beer.

103. 喝一杯绿茶吧。

Hē yì bēi lùchá ba.

Drink a cup of green tea!

104. 加一点糖吧!

Jiā yìdiǎnr táng ba.

Add a little sugar!

105. 喝茶对身体很好。

Hē chá duì shēntǐ hěn hǎo.

Drinking tea is good to health.

106. 要一杯咖啡,淡一点儿。

Yào yì bēi kāfēi, dàn yìdiǎnr.

I want a cup of coffee, lighter please.

107. 我喝了茶就不舒服。

Wǒ hē le chá jiù bù shūfu.

I feel uncomfortable after drinking tea.

108. 我试试。

Wǒ shìshì.

I would try.

109. 浓的、淡的我都不喜欢。

Nóng de, dàn de wǒ dōu bù xǐhuan.

I like neither thick nor light tea.

110. 花茶很香,很好喝。

Huāchá hěn xiāng, hěn hǎohē.

Scented tea is very fragrant, is very nice to drink.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一) 请朋友喝茶

(在朋友家作客 To be a guest at a friend's home)

A: 你喝点什么?

Nǐ hē diǎnr shénme?

What would you like to drink?

B: 我喜欢喝茶。

Wǒ xǐhuan hē chá.

I like to drink tea.

A: 喝什么茶? 红茶、绿茶还是花茶?

Hē shénme chá, hóngchá, lǜchá hái shì huāchá?

What kind of tea would you drink? Red tea, green tea or scented tea?

B: 喝一杯红茶吧。

Hē yì bēi hóngchá ba.

I would drink a cup of red tea.

A: 喝红茶应该加糖。

Hē hóngchá yīnggāi jiā táng.

To Drink red tea should add sugar.

B: 不,我不喜欢喝甜茶。

Bù, wǒ bù xǐhuan hē tián chá.

No, I do not like to drink sweet tea.

A: 牛奶呢?

Niúnǎi ne?

What about milk?

B: 牛奶要一点儿。

Niúnǎi yào yìdiǎnr.

I want a little milk.

(二)

A: 请喝茶!

Qǐng hē chá.

Please drink tea!

B: 对不起,我不喜欢喝茶。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù xǐhuan hē chá.

Sorry, I do not like to drink tea.



A: 什么茶也不喜欢吗?

Shénme chá yě bù xǐhuan ma?

Do you dislike all tea?

B: 是的,我什么茶也不喝。

Shìde, wǒ shénme chá yě bù hē.

Yes, I do not drink any tea.

A: 你知道吗,喝茶对身体很好。

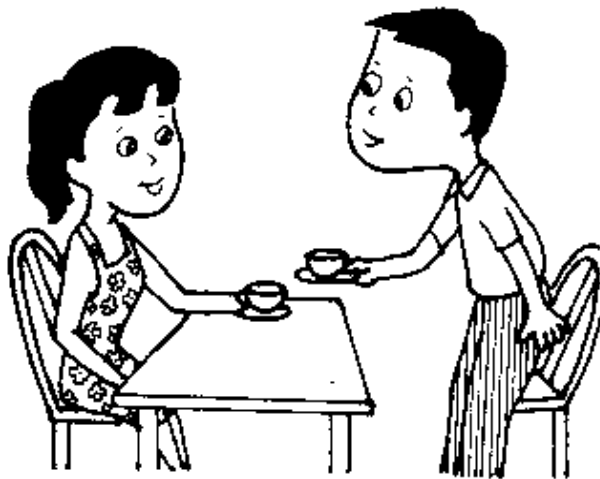
Nǐ zhīdào ma, hē chá duì shēntǐ hěn hǎo.

Do you know, drinking tea is good for health.

B: 我知道。可是,我喝了茶就不舒服,头疼。

Wǒ zhīdào. Kěshì, wǒ hēle chá jiù bù shūfu, tóu téng.

I know. However, I would feel uncomfortable after drinking tea, my head hurts.



A: 是不是太浓了? 淡一点儿就好了。

Shì bú shì tài nóng le? Dàn yìdiǎnr jiù hǎo le.

Is the tea too thick? Lighter would be better?

B: 是吗? 我试试。

Shì ma? Wǒ shìshì.

Is it true? I would try.

A: 这杯是茶,那杯是咖啡。

Zhè bei shì chá, nà bei shì kāfēi.

This cup is tea, that cup is coffee.

B: 谢谢,我要这杯。

Xièxie, wǒ yào zhè bēi.

Thank you, I want this cup.

### (三) 喝茶 Drink Tea

我喜欢喝茶,红茶、绿茶、花茶,什么茶都喜欢。我特别喜欢喝绿茶。绿茶很香,很好喝。我不喜欢喝咖啡,浓的、淡的,加糖的、不加糖的,有牛奶的、没有牛奶的,什么咖啡我都不喝。我喝了咖啡就不舒服,就头疼。你呢? 喜欢喝什么? 是茶,还是咖啡,还是啤酒?

Wǒ xǐhuan hē chá, hóngchá, lǜchá, huāchá, shénme chá dōu xǐhuan. Wǒ tèbié xǐhuan hē lǜchá. Lǜchá hěn xiāng, hěn hǎohē. Wǒ bù xǐhuan hē kāfēi, nóng de, dàn de, jiā táng de, bù jiā táng de, yǒu niú'nǎi de, méiyǒu niú'nǎi de, shénme kāfēi wǒ dōu bù hē. Wǒ hē le kāfēi jiù bù shūfu, jiù tóu téng. Nǐ ne? Xǐhuan hē shénme? Shì chá, háishi kāfēi, háishi píjiǔ?

I like to drink tea, any kind of tea such as red tea, green tea, scented tea. I particularly like to drink green tea. Green tea is very fragrant, is very nice to drink. I do not like to drink coffee, any kind of coffee such as thick coffee, light coffee, with or without sugar, with or without milk. I would feel uncomfortable when I drink coffee, my head hurts. What about you? What do you like to drink? Do you like to drink tea, coffee or beer?

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “喝一杯茶吧!”语气词“吧”用在句尾,除表示疑问外,也可以表示商量、请求的语气。

“喝一杯茶吧!” An auxiliary verb that indicates mood “吧” is used at the end of sentences, except to express enquiry, can be used to express moods of negotiation or request.

2. “淡一点儿”,“一点儿”也可以用在形容词后,表示程度。  
“淡一点儿”,“一点儿” can be used after adjectives to express degree or level.

3. “我试试”,“试试”是动词“试”的重叠式,表示动作短暂、轻松。  
“我试试”,“试试” is the reduplicated form of the verb“试”, indicate that the movements are brief, light.

又如:喝喝 Like others; drink

读读 read

4. “浓的、淡的”,“浓的、淡的”意思是“浓的茶、淡的茶”。助词“的”可以加在名词、动词、形容词及各种词组后面,和前面的成分一起指代事物。

如：名词+的	(这杯茶是)教师的
动词+的	(我要一点儿)喝的
形容词+的	(我不喜欢喝)浓的
词组+的	加糖的

“浓的”，“淡的”，The meaning of “浓的”，“淡的”is “浓的茶，淡的茶”。In Chinese the particle “的” can be added after nouns verbs, adjectives and other phrases to join the element before them to identify as something.

Like: noun+的	(This cup of tea) is the teacher's
verb+的	I want something to drink
adjective+的	I do not like drinking thick ones
word phrase+的	those with sugar added

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

##### 1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 你要茶还是咖啡?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 浓一点儿的还是淡一点的?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 加糖吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 要咖啡吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你要喝什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 喝啤酒对身体不好。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

问问 试试 喝喝 读读 等等 休息休息 做做

- (1) 这杯茶特别香,你( )。
- (2) 我要( )老师,去商店怎么走。
- (3) 你们( )我,我一会儿就跟你们走。
- (4) 你应该( )喝茶,喝茶对身体有好处。
- (5) 我身体不太舒服,想在家( )。
- (6) 外面下雨了,我什么地方也不想去,我要在家( )生  
词、( )练习、( )茶、( )。

V. 生词: New words

- |       |        |     |             |
|-------|--------|-----|-------------|
| 1. 喝  | hē     | (动) | drink       |
| 2. 茶  | chá    | (名) | tea         |
| 3. 喜欢 | xǐhuan | (动) | like        |
| 4. 啤酒 | píjiǔ  | (名) | beer        |
| 5. 加  | jiā    | (动) | add         |
| 6. 糖  | táng   | (名) | sugar       |
| 7. 杯  | bēi    | (名) | cup         |
| 8. 咖啡 | kāfēi  | (名) | coffee      |
| 9. 淡  | dàn    | (形) | light       |
| 10. 试 | shì    | (动) | try         |
| 11. 浓 | nóng   | (形) | thick       |
| 12. 花 | huā    | (形) | scented     |
| 花茶    | huāchá | (名) | scented tea |

13.	香	xiāng	(形)	fragrant
14.	红	hóng	(形)	red
	红茶	hóngchá	(名)	red tea
15.	绿	lǜ	(形)	green
	绿茶	lǜchá	(名)	green tea
16.	甜	tián	(形)	sweet
17.	知道	zhīdao	(动)	know
18.	那	nà	(代)	that

## 12. 星期天干什么

### What are you doing on Sunday?

#### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

111. 你在干什么?

Nǐ zài gàn shénme?

What are you doing?

112. 我正在看一本书。

Wǒ zhèngzài kàn yì běn shū.

I am reading a book.

113. 星期天你打算干什么?

Xīngqītiān nǐ dǎsuàn gàn shénme?

What do you plan to do on Sunday?

114. 我想去参观美术馆。

Wǒ xiǎng qù cānguān měishùguǎn.

I would like to visit the art museum.

115. 我打算去拜访一位朋友。

Wǒ dǎsuàn qù bài fǎng yí wèi péngyou.

I plan to visit a friend.

116. 我先去商店,然后去参观博物馆。

Wǒ xiān qù shāngdiàn, rán hòu qù cānguān bówùguǎn.

I would first go to the store, then visit the museum.

117. 那我们一起去吧!

Nà wǒmen yìqǐ qù ba!

We would go together then!

118. 我还不知道做什么。

Wǒ hái bù zhīdao zuò shénme.

I have no idea what to do.

119. 美术馆很有意思。

Měishùguǎn hěn yǒu yìsi.

Art museum is very interesting.

120. 一点儿意思也没有。

Yìdiǎnr yìsi yě méiyǒu.

It is not interesting at all.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 王红,你在干什么?

Wáng Hóng, nǐ zài gàn shénme?

Wang Hong, what are you doing?

B: 我正在看一本书。

Wǒ zhèngzài kàn yì běn shū.

I am reading a book.

A: 有意思吗?



Yǒu yìsi ma?

Is it interesting?

B: 不太有意思。

Bù tài yǒu yìsi.

It is not very interesting.

A: 今天天气很好,我们一起去参观美术馆吧!

Jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo, wǒmen yìqǐ qù cānguān měishùhuǎn ba!

Today's weather is very good, we would visit the art museum together!

B: 好,几点走?

Hǎo, jǐ diǎn zǒu?

All right, when do we set off?

A: 现在就去,怎么样?

Xiànzài jiù qù, zěnmeyàng?

We would go right now, how is it?

B: 行,你等我一会儿。

Xíng, nǐ děng wǒ yíhuìr.

Sure, please wait for a while.

(二)

A: 明天是星期天,你打算做什么?

Míngtiān shì xīngqītiān, nǐ dǎsuàn zuò shénme?

Tomorrow is Sunday, What do you plan to do?

B: 我要在家看书、做练习。你呢?

Wǒ yào zài jiā kàn shū, zuò liànxí. Nǐ ne?



I want to read and do exercise at home. What about you?

A: 在家一点儿意思也没有,我要出去。

Zài jiā yìdiǎnr yìsi yě méiyǒu, wǒ yào chūqù.

It is not interesting at all to stay at home. I want to go out.

B: 你去什么地方?

Nǐ qù shénme dìfang?

Where do you want to go?

A: 我先去商店买一点儿橘子跟苹果,然后去看一位朋友。

Wǒ xiān qù shāngdiàn mǎi yìdiǎnr júzi gēn píngguǒ, ránhòu qù kàn yí wèi péngyou.

I would first go to the store to buy some tangerines and apples,

and then go to see a friend.

B: 我需要买牛奶和面包,我跟你一起去商店,行吗?

Wǒ xūyào mǎi niúǎi hé miànbāo, wǒ gēn nǐ yìqǐ qù shāngdiàn,  
xíng ma?

I need to buy milk and bread, is it all right for me to go to the  
store with you?

A: 对不起,王红说她要和我一起去。

Duìbuqǐ, Wáng Hóng shuō tā yào hé wǒ yìqǐ qù.

Sorry, Wang Hong says she wants to come with me.

B: 那我不去了。

Nà wǒ bú qù le.

I will not go then.

### (三) 你喜欢干什么?

What do you like to do?

我喜欢在家,不喜欢出去。星期天我要在家喝茶,看看书,休息休息。王红呢,喜欢出去,不喜欢在家。她说在家一点儿意思也没有。星期天她要去商店,要去参观美术馆、博物馆,还要去拜访朋友。她喜欢跟朋友一起喝啤酒。你星期天喜欢做什么?

Wǒ xǐhuan zài jiā, bù xǐhuan chūqù. Xīngqītiān wǒ yào zài jiā  
hē chá, kànkān shū, xiūxi xiūxi. Wáng Hóng ne, xǐhuan chūqù, bù  
xǐhuan zài jiā. Tā shuō zài jiā yìdiǎnr yìsi yě méiyǒu. Xīngqītiān tā  
yào qù shāngdiàn, yào qù cānguǎn měishùguǎn, bówùguǎn, hǎi yào  
qù bàiǎng péngyou. Tā xǐhuan gēn péngyou yìqǐ hē píjiǔ. Nǐ

xīngqītiān xǐhuan zuò shénme?

I like to stay at home, do not like to go out. I want to stay at home to drink tea, read and rest on Sunday. What about Wang Hong, she like to go out and not stay at home. She says it is not interesting at all to stay at home. On Sunday, she wants to go to the store, wants to visit the art museum, museum, and to visit friends. She likes to drink beer with her friend. What do you like to do on Sunday?

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “在、正在”, 副词“在、正在”表示现在进行时。如“外面正在下雨”、“我在喝茶”。

“在、正在”, adverbs “在、正在” express the continuous movement or the movements are still going on. Like, “外面正在下雨” It is raining outside. “我在喝茶” I am drinking tea.

2. “还”, “还”有两个意思, 一个意思是“再”, 如“我还要一杯”。另一种意思是“仍然”, 如“我还不明白, 请再说一遍”。

“还”, “还” has got two meanings. One is “再”, like “我还要一杯” “I want another cup”. The other is “仍然”, like “我还不明白, 请再说一遍” “I still do not understand, please say it once again”.

3. “先……然后”, 这个句型表示动作发生的先后顺序。

“先…然后”, this sentence pattern indicates the order of the movements taing place.

4. “那我们一起去吧!” “那”除了有代词的意义外, 还是连词, 表示

顺着上文的意思说出一个看法、建议。

“那我们一起走吧!”“那”other than as a pronoun, it is a conjunction too, indicates a perspective, suggestion according to the content of the earlier mentioned message.

5. “一点儿意思也没有”,这是一个强调句型,强调程度很高,肯定式是“有意思”。

其他如:有钱                    一点儿钱也没有  
           有时间                 一点儿时间也没有

“一点儿意思也没有”, this is an emphasis sentence pattern, emphasizing the degree or level is very high, affirmative form is “有意思”。

再如:Others like: 有钱                    Have got money  
                                 一点钱也没有         Have got no money  
                                 有时间                    Have got time  
                                 一点时间也没有         Have got no time

6. “和、跟”,这两个词既是连词,也是介词。

“和、跟”, these two words are not only conjunctions, but prepositions.

#### IV. 练习: Exercise

1. 填上正确的量词: Fill in the blanks

间	位	本	杯	瓶	个
一(        )朋友			一(        )啤酒		
一(        )房间			一(        )牛奶		
一(        )茶			一(        )老师		
一(        )苹果			一(        )书		

一( )橘子      一( )银行

2. 用指定词回答问题:      Use the given words to answer the questions

- (1) 你在干什么? (在)
- (2) 他在干什么? (正在)
- (3) 你打算去哪儿? (先..., 然后...)
- (4) 美术馆有意思吗? (没有)
- (5) 我们一起去吗? (不, 和)
- (6) 你现在有时间吗? (没有)
- (7) 你跟他一起走吗? (对, 跟)
- (8) 晚上你做什么? (还)

V. 生词:      New words

1. 在	zài	(动、介)	be; in
2. 干	gàn	(动)	doing
3. 正在	zhèngzài	(副)	in the process of
4. 看	kàn	(动)	look
5. 本	běn	(量)	measure word
6. 打算	dǎsuàn	(动)	plan
7. 参观	cānguān	(动)	visit
8. 美术馆	měishùguǎn	(名)	art museum
9. 位	wèi	(量)	measure word
10. 朋友	péngyou	(名)	friend
11. 先	xiān	(形)	first
12. 然后	ránhòu	(连)	then

- |     |     |          |     |             |
|-----|-----|----------|-----|-------------|
| 13. | 博物馆 | bówùguǎn | (名) | museum      |
| 14. | 有意思 | yǒu yìsi |     | interesting |
| 15. | 意思  | yìsi     | (名) | interest    |
| 16. | 出去  | chūqù    | (动) | to go out   |

## 13. 喜欢古典音乐

### I like classical music

#### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

121. 我很喜欢音乐。  
Wǒ hěn xǐhuan yīnyuè.  
I like music very much.
122. 我比较喜欢古典音乐。  
Wǒ bǐjiào xǐhuan gǔdiǎn yīnyuè.  
I like classical music more.
123. 我一点儿也不喜欢流行音乐。  
Wǒ yīdiǎnr yě bù xǐhuan liúxíng yīnyuè.  
I do not like pop music at all.
124. 听音乐是一种享受。  
Tīng yīnyuè shì yì zhǒng xiǎngshòu.  
It is a kind of enjoyment to listen to music.
125. 你最爱听哪种音乐?  
Nǐ zuì ài tīng nǎ zhǒng yīnyuè?  
What kind of music do you like best?
126. 我最爱听钢琴曲。



Wǒ zuì ài tīng gāngqín qǔ.

I like to listen to piano tunes.

127. 你会弹钢琴吗?

Nǐ huì tán gāngqín ma?

Do you know how to play the piano?

128. 我学过弹钢琴,可是弹得不好。

Wǒ xuéguo tán gāngqín, kěshì tán de bù hǎo.

I have learnt to play the piano, however, I do not play very well.

129. 你经常去听音乐会吗?

Nǐ jīngcháng qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ma?

Do you often go to the concerts?

130. 每个星期六晚上都去。

Měi gè xīngqīliù wǎnshàng dōu qù.

I would go every Saturday evening.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 你喜欢音乐吗?

Nǐ xǐhuan yīnyuè ma?

Do you like music ?

B: 我很喜欢音乐。

Wǒ hěn xǐhuan yīnyuè.

I like music very much.

A: 你喜欢哪种音乐? 古典音乐还是流行音乐?

Nǐ xǐhuan nǎ zhǒng yīnyuè? Gǔdiǎn yīnyuè háishi liúxíng yīnyuè?

What kind of music do you like? Classical music or pop music?

B: 我比较喜欢流行音乐。

Wǒ bǐjiào xǐhuan liúxíng yīnyuè.

I like pop music better.

A: 我比较喜欢古典音乐。

Wǒ bǐjiào xǐhuan gǔdiǎn yīnyuè.

I like classical music better.

B: 那你经常去听音乐会吧?

Nà nǐ jīngcháng qù tīng yīnyuèhuì ba?

Do you often go to the concerts?

C: 是, 每个星期六晚上都去。

Shì, měi ge xīngqīliù wǎnshàng dōu qù.

Yes, I would go every Saturday night.

## (二)

A: 你最爱听哪种音乐?

Nǐ zuì ài tīng nǎ zhǒng yīnyuè?

What kind of music do you like best?

B: 我最爱听钢琴曲。

Wǒ zuì ài tīng gāngqín qǔ.

I love listening to piano tunes.

A: 我也喜欢听钢琴曲, 那是一种享受。

Wǒ yě xǐhuan tīng gāngqín qǔ, nà shì yì zhǒng xiǎngshòu.

I like to listen to piano tunes too, that is a kind of enjoyment.

B: 你会弹钢琴吗?

Nǐ huì tán gāngqín ma?

Do you know how to play the piano?

A: 不,我一点儿也不会弹。你呢?

Bù, wǒ yìdiǎnr yě bú huì tán. Nǐ ne?

No, I do not know at all. What about you?

B. 我会一点儿,我学过弹钢琴,可是弹得不好。

Wǒ huì yìdiǎnr, wǒ xuéguo tán gāngqín, kěshì tán de bù hǎo.

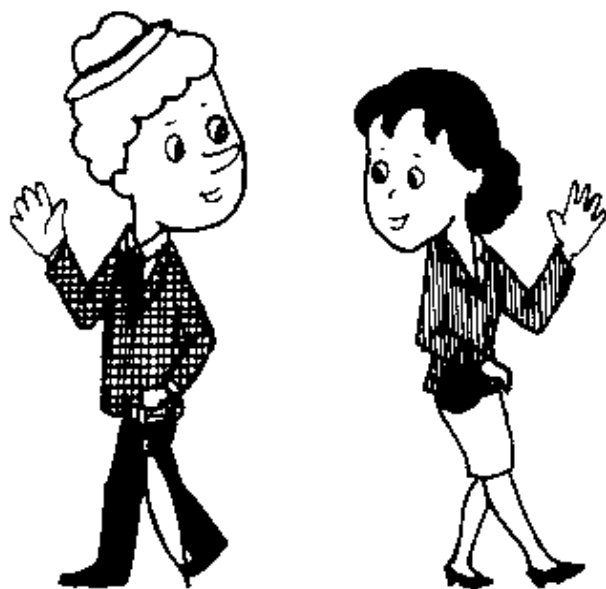
I know a little, I have learnt to play the piano, however, I do not play very well.

### (三) 我同意了 I have agreed

我和大卫都喜欢音乐。今天是星期六,我们没有别的事,打算一起去听音乐会。可是大卫喜欢流行音乐,不喜欢古典音乐。我呢,一点儿也不喜欢流行音乐,我喜欢古典音乐。我们不知道应该去哪个音乐会。大卫说,听音乐是一种享受,听不喜欢的音乐没意思,我们不要一起去了!我同意了。

Wǒ hé Dàwèi dōu xǐhuan yīnyuè. Jīntiān shì xīngqīliù, wǒmen méiyǒu biéde shì, dǎsuàn yìqǐ qù tīng yīnyuèhuì. Kěshì Dàwèi xǐhuan liúxíng yīnyuè, bù xǐhuan gǔdiǎn yīnyuè. Wǒ ne, yìdiǎnr yě bù xǐhuan liúxíng yīnyuè, wǒ xǐhuan gǔdiǎn yīnyuè. Wǒmen bù zhīdao yīnggāi qù nǎ ge yīnyuèhuì. Dàwèi shuō, tīng yīnyuè shì yì

zhǒng xiǎngshòu, tīng bù xǐhuan de yīnyuè méi yìsi, wǒmen bú yào  
yìqǐ qù le! Wǒ tóngyì le.



David and I like music. Today is Saturday, we have got nothing on, and plan to go to the concert together. However, David likes pop music. He does not like classical music. As for me, I do not like pop music at all. I like classical music. We do not know which concert to go to. David says, Listening to music is a kind of enjoyment, listening to music which one does not like would be meaningless, we should not go together! I have agreed.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “学过弹钢琴”, “过”是一个时态助词, 放在动词后表示有某种经历。

“学过弹钢琴”，“过”is an aspectual particle, is placed after verbs to express the experience.

如：(我)去过飞机场 Like: (I have)been to the airport.

(他)听过音乐会 (He has)been to the concert.

(他们)拜访过老师 (They have)visited the teacher.

2. “弹得不好”，结构助词“得”后的成分补充说明它前边的动词怎么样。肯定式有“弹得好”、“弹得比较好”、“弹得特别好”、“休息得不错”等。

“弹得不好”，the elements after the structural particle “得” further illustrate how the verb before “它” is used. The affirmative forms have: “弹得好” “Play well”, “弹得比较好” “Play better”, “弹得特别好” “Play the best”, “休息得不错” “rest well” etc.

3. “每个星期六晚上都去”，“每……都……”常在一起用，强调没有例外。

“每个星期六晚上都去”，“每…都…” is often used together, emphasizing that no exception is allowed.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 晚上你打算干什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你喜欢听哪种音乐?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你经常听音乐会吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 你会弹钢琴吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你的钢琴弹得怎么样?

B: \_\_\_\_\_, 你呢?

A: 我不会弹钢琴, 我没学过。

## 2. 翻译: Translate

(1) I love listening to classical music.

(2) He plays the piano extremely well.

(3) All of us visit the museum every Sunday.

(4) I have read every book.

(5) Every teacher likes to drink tea.

(6) Have you been to the airport?

(7) Have you visited the art museum?

## V. 生词: New words

- |       |           |       |             |
|-------|-----------|-------|-------------|
| 1. 音乐 | yīnyuè    | (名)   | music       |
| 音乐会   | yīnyuèhuì | (名)   | concert     |
| 2. 比较 | bǐjiào    | (动、副) | rather      |
| 3. 古典 | gǔdiǎn    | (名)   | classical   |
| 4. 流行 | liúxíng   | (动)   | in trends   |
| 5. 听  | tīng      | (动)   | listen      |
| 6. 种  | zhǒng     | (量)   | kind, types |
| 7. 享受 | xiǎngshòu | (动、名) | enjoy(ment) |
| 8. 最  | zuì       | (副)   | most; best  |
| 9. 爱  | ài        | (动)   | love        |

10.	哪	nǎ	(代)	which
11.	钢琴	gāngqín	(名)	piano
12.	曲	qǔ	(名)	tunes
13.	会	huì	(动)	know
14.	弹	tán	(动)	play
15.	学	xué	(动)	learn
16.	过	guo	(助)	<i>particle</i>
17.	得	de	(助)	<i>particle</i>
18.	经常	jīngcháng	(副)	often
19.	每	měi	(代)	every
20.	同意	tóngyì	(动)	agree

## 14. 欢迎您      you are welcomed

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

131. 请问,您是马丁先生吗?

Qǐng wèn, nín shì Mǎdīng xiānsheng ma?

May I ask, are you Mr. Martin?

132. 我是中国中信公司的,我叫王大林。

Wǒ shì Zhōngguó Zhōngxìn Gōngsī de, wǒ jiào Wáng Dàlín.

I am from Zhong Guo Zhong Xin company. I am Wang Dalin.

133. 我代表公司欢迎您。

Wǒ dài biǎo gōngsī huānyíng nín.

I welcome you on behalf of my company.

134. 认识您很高兴。

Rènshi nín hěn gāoxìng.

It is nice to see you.

135. 一路辛苦了!

Yí lù xīnkǔ le!

It must have been a tough trip!

136. 没什么。

Méi shénme.



It is nothing at all.

137. 您住长城饭店,可以吗?

Nín zhù Chángchéng Fàndiàn, kěyǐ ma?

Is it all right for you to stay at Great Wall Hotel?

138. 给您添麻烦了。

Gěi nín tiān máfan le.

Sorry to trouble you!

139. 我很满意。

Wǒ hěn mǎnyì.

I am very satisfied.

140. 不必客气。

Búbì kèqì.

You are welcome.

## II. 课文:

### (一)

(在机场接人 At the arrival hall)

A: 请问,您是马丁先生吗?

Qǐng wèn, nín shì Mǎdīng xiānsheng ma?

May I ask, are you Mr. Martin?

B: 是,您是……?

Shì, nín shì……?

Yes, are you……?

A: 我是中国中信公司的,我姓王。

Wǒ shì Zhōngguó Zhōngxìn Gōngsī de, wǒ xìng Wáng.

I am from Zhong Guo Zhong Xin company. My surname is Wang .

B: 王先生,您好。

Wáng xiānsheng, nín hǎo.

Mr. Wang, Hello!

A: 您好,认识您很高兴。我代表公司欢迎您。

Nín hǎo, rènshi nín hěn gāoxìng. Wǒ dài biǎo gōngsī huānyíng nín.

Hello, it is nice to see you. I welcome you on behalf of my company.

B: 认识您我也很高兴。

Rènshi nín wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng.

I am very happy to be able to know you.

A: 一路辛苦了!

Yí lù xīnkǔ le!

It must have been a tough trip!

B: 没什么。

Méi shénme.

It is nothing at all.

## (二)

(在汽车里 In the car)

A: 我们去哪儿?

Wǒmen qù nǎr?

Where are we going?

B: 去饭店。

Qù fàndiàn.

To the hotel.

A: 去哪个饭店?

Qù nǎ ge fàndiàn?

To which hotel?

B: 您住长城饭店,可以吗?

Nín zhù Chángchéng Fàndiàn, kěyǐ ma?

Is it all right for you to stay at Great Wall Hotel?

A: 很好,我很满意。给您添麻烦了。

Hěn hǎo, wǒ hěn mǎnyì. Gěi nín tiān máfan le.

I am very satisfied. Sorry to trouble you!

A: 不必客气。

Búbì kèqì.

You are welcome.

### (三) 马丁先生去中国了

Mr. Martin has gone to China

马丁先生去中国了。中国公司的王先生在飞机场欢迎他。王先生说：“马丁先生，一路上辛苦了，我代表公司欢迎您！”马丁先生说：“没什么，今天天气很好，路上很舒服。”然后他们要了出租汽车，一起去了长城饭店。马丁先生要住在那儿。

Mǎdīng xiānsheng qù Zhōngguó le. Zhōngguó gōngsī de Wáng

xiānsheng zài fēijīchǎng huānyíng tā. Wáng xiānsheng shuō: “Mǎdīng xiānsheng, yí lù shàng xīnkǔ le, wǒ dài biǎo gōngsī huānyíng nǐn.” Mǎdīng xiānsheng shuō: “méi shénme, jīntiān tiānqì hěn hǎo, lù shàng hěn shūfu.” Ránhòu tāmen yào le chūzūchē, yìqǐ qù le Chángchéng Fàndiàn. Mǎdīng xiānsheng yào zhùzài nàr.



Mr Martin has gone to China. Mr Wang from ZhongGuo Company is at the airport to meet him. Mr Wang says: “Mr. Martin, it must have been a tough trip, I welcome you on behalf of my company!” Mr. Martin says: “It is nothing at all, today’s weather is very good. It has been a comfortable trip.” Then they got a taxi to go to Great Wall Hotel together. Mr. Martin would stay there.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “没什么”,表示没关系、不介意。“没什么”也常用来回答别人的感谢。如: A:“谢谢你。”B:“没什么。”  
“没什么”, indicates “It’s all right”, “do not mind”. “没什么”is often used to express gratitude to others too. Like: A:“谢谢你。”“Thank you.” B:“没什么。”“It is nothing.”
2. “路上很舒服”,“路上”是“一路上”的简单形式。  
“路上很舒服”,“路上”is the simplified form of “一路上”.
3. “住在那儿”,“在+那儿”常用在动词后表示处所。也可以说“住在长城饭店”。  
“住在那儿”,“在+那儿”is often used after verbs to express location. It can be said “stay at Great Wall Hotel”.

### Ⅳ. 练习: Exercises

1. 选择正确的回答: Choose the correct answer  
(1) A: 一路上辛苦了!  
B: a. 不谢!      b. 不客气!      c. 没什么。      d. 不必客气!
- (2) A: 给您添麻烦了!  
B: a. 太好了!      b. 不客气!      c. 不谢。      d. 不必客气!
- (3) A: 请问,长城饭店在哪儿?  
B: 就在前边。

A: 谢谢!

B: a. 不谢!      b. 不客气!      c. 没什么。      d. 太好了!

2. 把下列词连成句子。 To join the following words into sentences

- (1) 我    长城饭店    想    住
- (2) 欢迎    代表    公司    我    您
- (3) 很    认识    我    高兴    您    也
- (4) 麻烦    给    添    您    了
- (5) 我们    去    飞机场    一起    要
- (6) 住    那儿    满意    很    我

## V. 生词:      New words

- |        |             |     |             |
|--------|-------------|-----|-------------|
| 1. 先生  | xiānsheng   | (名) | Mister      |
| 2. 公司  | gōngsī      | (名) | company     |
| 3. 代表  | dàibiǎo     | (动) | represent   |
| 4. 认识  | rènshi      | (动) | know        |
| 5. 高兴  | gāoxìng     | (形) | glad        |
| 6. 一路上 | yí lù shang |     | all the way |
| 7. 辛苦  | xīnkǔ       | (形) | tough       |
| 8. 没什么 | méi shénme  |     | nothing     |
| 9. 长城  | Chángchéng  |     | Great Wall  |
| 10. 饭店 | fàndiàn     | (名) | hotel       |
| 11. 给  | gěi         | (动) | give        |
| 12. 添  | tiān        | (动) | give        |
| 13. 麻烦 | máfan       | (名) | trouble     |
| 14. 满意 | mǎnyì       | (形) | satisfy     |

- |     |      |                    |     |                          |
|-----|------|--------------------|-----|--------------------------|
| 15. | 不必   | búbì               | (副) | no need                  |
| 16. | 那儿   | nàr                | (代) | there                    |
| 17. | 马丁   | Mǎdīng             |     | Martin                   |
| 18. | 中国   | Zhōngguó           |     | China                    |
| 19. | 中信公司 | Zhōngxìn Gōngsī    |     | <i>name of a company</i> |
| 20. | 王大林  | Wáng Dàlín         |     | Wang Dalin               |
| 21. | 长城饭店 | Chángchéng Fàndiàn |     | Great Wall Hotel         |

## 15. 你学过中文吗

### Have you learned Chinese?

#### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

141. 你会说中文吗?  
Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?  
Do you know how to speak Chinese?
142. 你能看中文书吗?  
Nǐ néng kàn Zhōngwén shū ma?  
Can you read Chinese books?
143. 你为什么学习中文?  
Nǐ wèi shénme yào xuéxí Zhōngwén?  
Why do you want to learn Chinese?
144. 中国有几千年的历史。  
Zhōngguó yǒu jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ.  
China's history is a few thousand years old.
145. 我想了解中国。  
Wǒ xiǎng liáojiě Zhōngguó.  
I want to find out more about China.
146. 我喜欢中国文学。



Wǒ xǐhuan Zhōngguó wénxué.

I like Chinese literature.

147. 我要努力学习中文,和中国人做朋友。

Wǒ yào nǔlì xuéxí Zhōngwén, hé Zhōngguó rén zuò péngyou.

I want to work hard to learn Chinese, and to make friends with the Chinese.

148. 我打算明年去中国学习汉语。

Wǒ dǎsuàn míngnián qù Zhōngguó xuéxí Hànyǔ.

I plan to go to China to learn Chinese next year.

149. 我说中文,你懂不懂?

Wǒ shuō Zhōngwén, nǐ dǒng bu dǒng?

I speak Chinese, do you understand?

150. 请慢一点儿说。

Qǐng màn yìdiǎnr shuō.

Please speak slowly.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 你会说中文吗?

Nǐ huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?

Do you know how to speak Chinese?

B: 我会一点儿。

Wǒ huì yìdiǎnr.

I know a little.

A: 你能看中文书吗?

Nǐ néng kàn Zhōngwén shū ma?

Can you read Chinese books?

B: 还不能看。

Hái bù néng kàn.

I still cannot read (chinese).

A: 我说中文,你懂不懂?

Wǒ shuō Zhōngwén, nǐ dǒng bu dǒng?

I speak Chinese, do you understand?

B: 你慢一点说,我可以懂。

Nǐ màn yìdiǎnr shuō, wǒ kěyǐ dǒng.

You speak slowly, I would understand.

(二)

A: 你学过中文,是吗?

Nǐ xué guò Zhōngwén, shì ma?

You have learnt Chinese, haven't you?

B: 是,我学过中文。

Shì, wǒ xué guò Zhōngwén.

Yes, I have learnt Chinese.

A: 你喜欢学习中文吗?

Nǐ xǐhuan xuéxí Zhōngwén ma?

Do you like to learn Chinese?

B: 我很喜欢学习中文。

Wǒ hěn xǐhuan xuéxí Zhōngwén.

I like to learn Chinese very much.

A: 为什么呢?

Wèi shénme ne?

Why?

B: 因为我特别喜欢中国文学,我想看中文书。

Yīnwèi wǒ tèbié xǐhuan Zhōngguó wénxué, wǒ xiǎng kàn Zhōngwén shū.

Because I particularly like Chinese literature, I want to read Chinese books.

A: 你想学汉语,应该去中国。

Nǐ xiǎng xué Hànyǔ, yīnggāi qù Zhōngguó.

You want to learn Chinese, Should go to China.

B: 是啊,我打算明年去中国学习汉语。

Shì a, wǒ dǎsuàn míngnián qù Zhōngguó xuéxí Hànyǔ.

Yes, I plan to go to China to learn Chinese next year.



### (三) 我要去中国 I want to go to China

中国有几千年的历史,我很想了解中国。我学过中文,可是我的中文还不太好,我还不能看中文书。我打算明年去北京学习汉语。我要努力学习中文,和中国人做朋友。我还要参观博物馆、美术馆,还要经常去听音乐会。我很喜欢中国音乐。我也很喜欢中国文学,我要看中国文学作品。

Zhōngguó yǒu jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ, wǒ hěn xiǎng liǎojiě Zhōngguó. Wǒ xuéguo Zhōngwén, kěshì wǒ de Zhōngwén hái bú tài hǎo, wǒ hái bù néng kàn Zhōngwén shū. Wǒ dǎsuàn míngnián qù Běijīng xuéxí Hànyǔ. Wǒ yào nǜlì xuéxí Zhōngwén, hé Zhōngguórén zuò péngyou. Wǒ hái yào qù cānguān měishùguǎn, bówùguǎn, hái yào jīngcháng qù tīng yīnyuèhuì. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan Zhōngguó yīnyuè. Wǒ yě hěn xǐhuan Zhōngguó wénxué, wǒ yào kàn Zhōngguó wénxué zuòpǐn.

China's history is a few thousand years old. I want to find more about China. I have learnt Chinese, however, my Chinese level is not good, I can not read Chinese books as yet. I plan to go to Beijing to learn Chinese next year. I want to work hard to learn Chinese and make friends with Chinese. I also want to visit museums, art galleries, and often listen to music concerts. I enjoy Chinese music very much. I also like Chinese literature. I want to read works of Chinese literature.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “能”和“会”，“能”和“会”用在动词前面，表示能够做什么，具备什么能力。否定式为“不能”、“不会”。  
“能” and “会”，“能” and “会” are used before verbs to express what man can manage to do, what capacities one possess. The negative form is “不能”，“不会”。
2. “为什么”，询问原因，后面加动词，有时只加一个“呢”，成为“为什么呢？”  
“为什么”，inquire about the reason, verbs are added after it, sometimes only “呢” is added to form “为什么呢？”
3. “是啊”，“是啊”表示同意对方意见，并且接着作进一步的说明。  
“是啊”，“是啊” express one's agreement with the other party's opinions, make an effort to explain further.

### Ⅳ. 练习: Exercises

#### 1. 完成句子: Complete the following sentences

(1) 你会说中文吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你想学习中文吗?

B: 是的, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你为什么想学习中文?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) 你喜欢中国文学吗?

B: 是的, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你能看中国文学吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你能说中文吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(3) A: 我说中文,你懂不懂?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你学过中文吗?

B: 没有, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你打算学中文吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

(4) A: 你打算去中国,是吗?

B: 是的, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 去干什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你打算去中国哪儿?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

## 2. 翻译词组:     translate

### (1) 了解中国

了解中国文学

了解中国历史

了解中国公司

### (2) 为什么要去中国

为什么想参观美术馆

为什么学习中文

为什么不喜欢喝咖啡

- (3) 会说中文  
     会弹钢琴  
     能看中文书  
     能听懂中文
- (4) 打算休息休息  
     打算去参观博物馆  
     打算听听音乐  
     打算去商店

## V. 生词:      New words

- |        |            |     |                 |
|--------|------------|-----|-----------------|
| 1. 能   | néng       | (动) | could           |
| 2. 为什么 | wèi shénme |     | why             |
| 3. 学习  | xuéxí      | (动) | learn           |
| 4. 千   | qiān       | (数) | thousand        |
| 5. 年   | nián       | (名) | year            |
| 6. 历史  | lìshǐ      | (名) | history         |
| 7. 了解  | liǎojiě    | (动) | understand      |
| 8. 文学  | wénxué     | (名) | literature      |
| 9. 努力  | nǔlì       | (形) | work hard       |
| 10. 明年 | míngnián   | (名) | next year       |
| 11. 懂  | dǒng       | (动) | understand      |
| 12. 慢  | màn        | (形) | slow            |
| 慢一点儿   | mànyìdiǎnr |     | slower          |
| 13. 因为 | yīnwèi     | (介) | because         |
| 14. 啊  | a          | (助) | <i>particle</i> |
| 15. 作品 | zuòpǐn     | (名) | works           |

- |     |     |              |     |         |
|-----|-----|--------------|-----|---------|
| 16. | 中文  | Zhōngwén     | (名) | Chinese |
| 17. | 中国人 | Zhōngguó rén | (名) | Chinese |
| 18. | 中国  | Zhōngguó     |     | China   |
| 19. | 汉语  | Hànyǔ        | (名) | Chinese |



## 16. 我的汉语老师      My Chinese teacher

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

151. 您早!

Nín zǎo!

Good morning!

152. 早上好! 休息得好吗?

Zǎoshang hǎo! Xiūxi de hǎo ma?

Good morning! Have you rested well?

153. 您贵姓?

Nín guì xìng?

What is your surname?

154. 我姓王,叫王大林。

Wǒ xìng Wáng, jiào Wáng Dà lín.

My surname is Wang, I am Wang Dalin.

155. 他是谁?

Tā shì shéi?

Who is he?

156. 他是我们公司的老板马丁先生。

Tā shì wǒme gōngsī de lǎobǎn Mǎdīng xiānsheng.

He is the boss of our company, Mr. Martin.

157. 他是哪国人?

Tā shì nǎ guó rén.

What is his nationality?

158. 他是德国人。

Tā shì Déguó rén.

He is a German.

159. 他懂几种语言?

Tā dǒng jǐ zhǒng yǔyán?

How many languages does he understand?

160. 除了德语外,他还懂英语、法语、日语和汉语。

Chú le Déyǔ wài, tā hái dǒng Yīngyǔ, Fǎyǔ, Rìyǔ hé Hànyǔ.

Besides German, he knows English, French, Japanese and Chinese.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(在饭店,早上和服务员谈话)

(At the hotel, speaking to an attendant in the morning)

A: (客人)您早!

Nín zǎo!

(Guest) Good morning!

B. (服务员)早上好! 休息得好吗?

Zǎoshang hǎo! xiūxi de hǎo ma?

(Attendant) Good morning! Have you rested well in the night?

A: 很好, 谢谢!

Hěn hǎo, xièxie!

Great, Thank you!

B: 请问, 您是英国人吗?

Qǐng wèn, nín shì Yīngguó rén ma?

May I ask, are you an Englishman?

A: 不, 我不是英国人, 我是德国人。

Bù, wǒ bú shì Yīngguó rén, wǒ shì Déguó rén.

No, I am not an Englishman, I am a German.

B: 对不起, 请原谅。

Duìbuqǐ, qǐng yuánliàng.

Sorry, please forgive me.

A: 没什么。你会说德语吗?

Méi shénme. Nǐ huì shuō Déyǔ ma?

It is nothing at all. Do you know how to speak German?

B: 不, 我会说一点儿英语。

Bù, wǒ huì shuō yìdiǎnr Yīngyǔ.

No, I can speak only a little English.

A: 别的呢?

Biéde ne?

What about others?

B: 除了英语外, 我还能说一点儿日语。

Chúle Yīngyǔ wài, wǒ hái néng shuō yìdiǎnr Rìyǔ.

Besides English, I can still speak a little Japanese.

A: 因为很多客人都说英语和日语吧?

Yīnwèi hěn duō kèrén dōu shuō Yīngyǔ hé Rìyǔ ba?

It is because many guests speak both English and Japanese?

B: 是。

Shì.

Yes.

(二)

A: 他是谁?

Tā shì shéi?

Who is he?

B: 他是我们公司的老板。

Tā shì wǒmen gōngsī de lǎobǎn.

He is the boss of our company.

A: 他姓什么?

Tā xìng shénme?

What is his surname?

B: 我们不知道他姓什么,我们都叫他马丁先生。

Wǒmen bù zhīdao tā xìng shénme, wǒmen dōu jiào tā Mǎdīng xiānsheng.

We do not know his surname, all of us address him as Mr. Martin.

A: 马丁先生是哪国人?

Mǎdīng xiānsheng shì nǎ guó rén?

What is Mr. Martin's nationality?

B: 他是美国人。

Tā shì Měiguórén.

He is an American.

A: 他会说汉语吗?

Tā huì shuō Hànyǔ ma?

Does he know how to speak Chinese?

B: 会。他懂很多种语言。汉语、日语、德语、法语他都会说。

Huì. Tā dǒng hěnn duō zhǒng yǔyán. Hànyǔ, Rìyǔ, Déyǔ, Fǎyǔ tā dōu huì shuō.

Yes. He knows many languages. He can speak Chinese, Japanese, German and French.

### (三) 我的老师 My teacher

我的汉语老师是中国人。他姓马,叫马林。他身体很好,什么病也没有。他很喜欢喝茶,每天要喝七八杯。他说,喝茶对身体很有好处。马老师懂很多种语言。他的英文说得很好。除了英语,他还能说法语、德语和日语。马老师还很喜欢读书,他对英国历史和日本历史都很了解,他也很了解法国的文学。我们都非常喜欢马老师。

Wǒ de Hànyǔ lǎoshī shì Zhōngguó rén, Tā xìng Mǎ, jiào Mǎ Lín. Tā shēntǐ hěn hǎo, shénme bìng yě méiyǒu. Tā hěn xǐhuan hē chá, měitiān yào hē qī-bā bēi. Tā shuō, hē chá duì shēntǐ yǒu hǎochu. Mǎ lǎoshī dǒng hěnn duō zhǒng yǔyán. Tā de Yīngwén shuō de hěn hǎo. Chule Yīngyǔ, tā hái néng shuō Fǎyǔ, Déyǔ hé Rìyǔ. Mǎ lǎoshī hái hěn xǐhuan dú shū, tā duì Yīngguó lìshǐ hé Rìběn lìshǐ dōu hěn liǎojiě, tā yě hěn liǎojiě Fǎguó de wénxué. Wǒmen dōu fēicháng xǐhuan Mǎ lǎoshī.



My Chinese teacher is a Chinese. His surname is Ma, he is Ma Lin. His health is very good, has got no illness. He likes to drink tea very much, he drinks seven to eight cups every day. He says, drinking tea is good for health. Mr. Ma understands many languages. He speaks good English. Besides English, he can speak French, German and Japanese. Mr. Ma likes to read books too! He has great understanding about history of English and history of Japan. He understands a lot about French literature too. All of us like him very much.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “(您)贵姓”是客气的问法,意思是“(你)姓什么?”

“(您)贵姓”, is a polite form of asking what is your surname, It means “what is your name?”

2. “谁”表示疑问时,在句子中的位置有两种:(1)在动词后:“他是谁?”(2)在动词前:“谁是美国人?”

Use “谁” to express quiry, it can take two positions in a sentence: (1) After verbs “他是谁?”(2) Before verbs “谁是美国人?”.

3. “除了……外,……还(也)……”,这是一个固定用法,“外”可以省略不说。

“除了…外,…还(也)…”, this is a firmmed usage, “外” can be left out.

如:除了我,他也去过那儿。Like; Besides me, he has been there too.

除了红茶,我还喜欢喝绿茶。 Besides red tea, I like to drink green tea too.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 请问,您贵姓?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 您是哪国人?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 您会说汉语吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 您身体好吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_, 你呢?

A: \_\_\_\_\_。

B: 你是不是中国人?

A: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

B: 你的汉语说得很好。

(3) 她是谁?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 她懂汉语吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 别的语言呢?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(4) A: 早上好!

B: 早上好! \_\_\_\_\_?

A: 我休息得很好。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 是的,我要去银行。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 改正病句: Correct the following incorretly written sentences

(1) 认识你很高兴也。

(2) 他 我 的老师。

(3) 你会说英语,会说日语还。

(4) 我的日语说不太好。

(5) 你老师是哪国人?

(6) 除了中国,我去过日本。

(7) 除了汉语,也我会日语。

(8) 你休息好吗?



## V. 生词: New words

1. 早	zǎo	(形)	(early) morning
2. 早上	zǎoshang	(名)	(early) morning
3. 姓	xìng	(动)	surname
4. 贵姓	guì xìng		surname
5. 谁	shéi	(代)	who
6. 老板	lǎobǎn	(名)	boss
7. 国	guó	(名)	country
8. 语言	yǔyán	(名)	language
9. 除了……(外)	chúle…(wài)		besides
10. 原谅	yuánliàng	(动)	forgive
11. 多	duō	(形)	many
12. 客人	kèren	(名)	guest
13. 天	tiān	(名)	day
14. 好处	hǎochu	(名)	advantage
15. 德国人	Déguórén		German
16. 英国人	Yīngguórén		English
17. 美国人	Měiguórén		American
18. 德语	Déyǔ		German
19. 英语	Yīngyǔ		English
20. 法语	Fǎyǔ		French
21. 日语	Rìyǔ		Japanese
22. 英国	Yīngguó		English
23. 日本	Rìběn		Japan
24. 法国	Fǎguó		France
25. 马林	Mǎ Lín		Malin

## 17. 开学了      Term has started

### I. 句型:      Sentence Pattern

161. 这学期我有四门课。  
Zhè xuéqī wǒ yǒu sì mén kè.  
I have got four subjects this semester.
162. 我每天有三个小时课。  
Wǒ měi tiān yǒu sān ge xiǎoshí kè.  
I have got three hours of class every day.
163. 上午有课,下午没课。  
Shàngwǔ yǒu kè, xiàwǔ méi kè.  
I have got classes in the morning, but not in the afternoon.
164. 晚上经常去图书馆看书。  
Wǎnshàng jīngcháng qù túshūguǎn kàn shū.  
I often go to the library at night to read books.
165. 我学习电脑课了。  
Wǒ xuéxí diànnǎo kè le.  
I have attended the computer class.
166. 你中午在哪儿吃饭?  
Nǐ zhōngwǔ zài nǎr chī fàn?  
Where do you eat lunch?

167. 中午我在学校餐厅吃饭。  
Zhōngwǔ wǒ zài xuéxiào cāntīng chī fàn.  
I eat my lunch at the school canteen.
168. 学校快开学了吗?  
Xuéxiào kuài kāi xué le ma?  
Is the school reopening soon?
169. 是,快开学了。  
Shì, kuài kāi xué le.  
Yes, school is starting soon.
170. 我们快要放假了。  
Wǒmen kuài yào fàng jià le.  
The holidays are coming soon.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 这学期你有几门课?

Zhè xuéqī nǐ yǒu jǐ mén kè?

How many subjects have you got this semester?

B: 我有四门课。

Wǒ yǒu sì mén kè.

I have got four subjects.

A: 什么课?

Shénme kè?

What are the subjects?

B: 汉语、中国历史、中国文学和电脑课。

Hànyǔ, Zhōngguó lìshǐ, Zhōngguó wénxué hé diànnǎo kè.

Chinese, Chinese history, Chinese literature and computer.

A: 你每天都有课吗?

Nǐ měi tiān dōu yǒu kè ma?

Do you have classes every day?

B: 除了星期六和星期天,我每天都上课。

Chúle xīngqīliù hé xīngqītiān, wǒ měi tiān dōu shàng kè.

Except for Saturday and Sunday, I have to attend class everyday.

A: 上午上课还是下午上课?

Shàngwǔ shàng kè hái shì xiàwǔ shàng kè?

Do you have classes in the morning or afternoon?

B: 上午有课,下午没课。

Shàngwǔ yǒu kè, xiàwǔ méi kè.

I have got classes in the morning, not in the afternoon.

A: 下午你干什么?

Xiàwǔ nǐ gàn shéme?

What do you do in the afternoon?

B: 我经常去图书馆看书。

Wǒ jīngcháng qù túshūguǎn kàn shū.

I often go to the library to read books.

A: 你中午在哪儿吃饭?

Nǐ zhōngwǔ zài nǎr chī fàn?

Where do you eat lunch?

B: 中午我在学校餐厅吃饭。

Zhōngwǔ wǒ zài xuéxiào cāntīng chī fàn.

I eat my lunch at the school canteen.

A: 餐厅的饭怎么样?

Cāntīng de fàn zěnmeyàng?

How is the food at the canteen?

B: 不错,很便宜。

Búcuò, hěn piányi.

Not too bad, is very cheap.

(二)

A: 你每天有几个小时课?

Nǐ měi tiān yǒu jǐ ge xiǎoshí kè?

How many hours of classes do you have every day?

B: 我每天有四个小时课。

Wǒ měitiān yǒu sì ge xiǎoshí kè.

I have got four hours of classes every day.

A: 每天都有中文课吗?

Měi tiān dōu yǒu Zhōngwén kè ma?

Do you have Chinese class everyday?

B: 是,每天都有一个小时中文课。

Shì, měitiān dōu yǒu yí ge xiǎoshí Zhōngwén kè.

I have got one hour of Chinese class everyday.

A: 你的中文老师是哪国人?

Nǐ de Zhōngwén lǎoshī shì nǎ guó rén?

What is your Chinese teacher's nationality?

B: 是中国人。

Shì Zhōngguó rén.

Chinese.

A: 他的课有意思吗?

Tā de kè yǒu yìsi ma?

Is his class interesting?

B: 一点儿意思也没有。

Yīdiǎnr yìsi yě méiyǒu.

It is not interesting at all.

A: 什么课有意思?

Shénme kè yǒu yìsi?

What classes are  
interesting?

B: 电脑课最有意思。这学期我学习电脑课了。

Diànnǎo kè zuì yǒu yìsi. Zhè xuéqī wǒ xuéxí diànnǎo kè le.

Computer class is the most interesting class. I am attending  
computer class this semester.



### (三) 开学了 School has started.

学校开学了。这学期我有四门课：德语、中国历史、法国文学和电脑课。我的课都在上午。八点上课，十二点下课，中午我在学校餐厅吃饭。下午和晚上我经常去图书馆看书。我最喜欢中国历史课。中国有几千年的历史，有很多有意思的事。我很想了解中国。我打算学习汉语。我要看懂中文书。

Xuéxiào kāi xué le. Zhè xuéqī wǒ yǒu sì mén kè: Déyǔ, Zhōngguó lìshǐ, Fǎguó wénxué hé diànnǎo kè. Wǒ de kè dōu zài shàngwǔ. Bā diǎn shàng kè, shí'èr diǎn xià kè. Zhōngwǔ wǒ zài xuéxiào cāntīng chī fàn. Xiàwǔ hé Wǎnshang wǒ jīngcháng qù túshūguǎn kàn shū. Wǒ zuì xǐhuan Zhōngguó lìshǐ kè. Zhōngguó yǒu jǐ qiān nián de lìshǐ, yǒu hěn duō yǒu yìsi de shì. Wǒ hěn xiǎng liǎojiě Zhōngguó. Wǒ dǎsuàn xuéxí Hànyǔ. Wǒ yào kàndǒng Zhōngwén shū.

School has started. I have got four subjects this semester: German, Chinese history, French literature and Computer studies. My classes are all in the morning. My class begins at eight o'clock in the morning and ends at twelve o'clock. I eat my lunch at the school canteen. I often go to the library in the afternoon and at night to read books. I like Chinese history class most. China's history is a few thousand years old. It has got a lot of interesting happenings. I plan to learn Chinese, I want to know more about China and be able to read Chinese books.

### Ⅲ. 注释      Annotation

1. “下午没课”,“没”是“没有”的省略式,口语中常用。

“下午没课”,“没”is the simplified form of “没有”, is commonly used in the oral form.

2. “早上、上午、中午、下午、晚上”是汉语中五个表示时间的名词,它们可以在主语前,也可以在主语后。

“早上,上午,中午,下午,晚上”are the five nouns used to

express time in Chinese. They can be used before the subject, after the subject too.

比较 { 我上午有课。 Compare { I have got class in the morning.  
          { 上午我有课。            { In the morning, I have got class.

3. “快……了”、“快要……了”,“快……了”,“快要……了”和以前学过的“要……了”(见第九课),是汉语中三个表示动作将要发生的句型。都表示动作很快要发生。

“快…了”“快要…了”,“快…了”“快要…了” and “要…了” (learnt in lesson 9) are the three sentence patterns in Chinese.

Which express that the movements are going to happen.

如: 要上课了           Like: Lessons are going to start  
      快吃饭了           We are going to eat  
      快要开学了        school is going to begin

#### IV. 练习:       Exercise

1. 完成对话:       Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 几点了?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我们几点有课?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 走吧,要上课了。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 今天星期几?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我们有没有电脑课?

B: 没有, \_\_\_\_\_。



A: 我们有什么课?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(3) A: 你每天都有课吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 晚上你经常干什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 还干什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(4) A: 我们快要放假了吧?

B: 是的, \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 这学期你有几门课?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 什么课最有意思?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 把下列词连成句子: To join the following phrases as complete sentences

(1) 在 餐厅 我 吃 每天 饭 都

(2) 打算 我 学期 这 电脑 上 课

(3) 经常 听 在 他 晚上 家 音乐

(4) 汉语课 我 除了 喜欢 历史课 还

(5) 上 课 三个小时 每天 我 上午

(6) 放假 我们 了 快要 学校

(7) 了解 中国 他 想 非常

(8) 一点儿 历史 课 也 意思 没有

## V. 生词:      New words

1. 学期	xuéqī	(名)	semester school term
2. 门	mén	(量)	<i>measure word</i>
3. 课	kè	(名)	subjects
4. 小时	xiǎoshí	(名)	hour
5. 上午	shàngwǔ	(名)	morning
6. 图书馆	túshūguǎn	(名)	library
7. 电脑	diànnǎo	(名)	computer
8. 中午	zhōngwǔ	(名)	noon, midday
9. 吃	chī	(动)	eat
10. 饭	fàn	(名)	meals
11. 学校	xuéxiào	(名)	school
12. 餐厅	cāntīng	(名)	canteen
13. 快	kuài	(形)	fast, soon
14. 开学	kāi xué		school opens
15. 放假	fàng jià		have a holiday

## 18. 去动物园 To the Zoo

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

171. 劳驾, 附近有没有公园?

Láojià, fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu gōngyuán?

Excuse me, is there any parks nearby?

172. 附近只有动物园。

Fùjìn zhǐ yǒu dòngwùyuán.

There is only a zoo nearby.

173. 请告诉我怎么走。

Qǐng gàosù wǒ zěnmē zǒu.

Please tell me how to get there.

174. 顺着这条马路一直往东(西)走。

Shùnzhē zhè tiáo mǎlù yìzhí wǎng dōng (xī) zǒu.

Follow this road and walk in the east (west) direction.

175. 动物园在马路南(北)边。

Dòngwùyuán zài mǎlù nán (běi) bian.

The zoo is at the south (north) side of the road.

176. 对面是一个大商店。

Duìmiàn shì yí ge dà shāngdiàn.

There is a big store at the opposite.

177. 有多远?

Yǒu duō yuǎn?

How far is it?

178. 不太远，走十分钟就到。

Bútài yuǎn, zǒu shí fēnzhōng jiù dào.

It is not too far, It is only ten minutes away

179. 动物园很好玩儿。

Dòngwùyuán hěn hǎowánr.

The zoo is very amusing.

180. 那儿有各种动物。

Nàr yǒu gè zhǒng dòngwù.

There has got different animals

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 劳驾，请问附近有没有公园？

Láojià, qǐng wèn fùjìn yǒu méiyǒu gōngyuán?

Excuse me, may I ask is there any parks nearby?

B: 附近只有动物园。

Fùjìn zhǐ yǒu dòngwùyuán.

There is only a zoo nearby.

A: 请告诉我怎么走。

Qǐng gàosù wǒ zěnmē zǒu.

Please tell we how to get there

B: 顺着这条马路一直往东走。

Shùnzhe zhè tiáo mǎlù yìzhí wǎng dōng zǒu.

Follow this road and walk in the east direction.

A: 一直往东吗?

Yìzhí wǎng dōng ma?

All the way towards the east?

B: 一直往东走，然后再往右拐。

Yìzhí wǎng dōng zǒu, ránhòu zài wǎng yòu guǎi.

All the way towards the east, turn to the right then.

A: 然后就到了?

Ránhòu jiù dào le?

I get there then?

B: 是，动物园在马路南边。

Shì, dòngwùyuán zài mǎlù nánbian.

Yes, the zoo is at the south side of the road.

A: 有多远?

Yǒu duō yuǎn?

How far is it?

B: 不太远，走一刻钟就到了。

Bú tài yuǎn, zǒu yí kè zhōng jiù dào le.

Not too far, it is only fifteen minutes away.

A: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

B: 不谢!

Bú xiè!

No thanks!

(二)

A: 今天天气真好, 不冷也不热。

Jīntiān tiānqì zhēn hǎo, bù lěng yě bú rè.

Today's weather is really good, It is not too cold not too hot.

B: 是啊, 我们出去玩儿吧。

Shì a, wǒmen chūqù wánr ba?

Yes, let's go and have fun.

A: 好, 去哪儿玩儿?

Hǎo, qù nǎr wánr?

All right, where do we go and have fun?

B: 去动物园, 怎么样?

Qù dòngwùyuán, zěnmeyàng?

To the zoo how is it?

A: 动物园我去过了, 去别的公园吧!

Dòngwùyuán wǒ qùguo le, qù biéde gōngyuán ba!

I have been to the zoo, let's go to other parks!

B: 别的公园都太远了, 还是动物园有意思。

Biéde gōngyuán dōu tài yuǎn le, hái shì dòngwùyuán yǒu yìsi.

The other parks are too far off, the zoo is more interesting.

A: 你喜欢去动物园?

Nǐ xǐhuan qù dòngwùyuán?

Do you like to go to the zoo?

B: 动物园很好玩儿, 有各种动物。我很喜欢看动物吃东

西。

Dòngwùyuán hěn hǎowánr, yǒu gè zhǒng dòngwù. Wǒ hěn xǐhuan kàn dòngwù chī dōngxi.

The zoo is very amusing, it has got different animals. I like to watch animals feeding on their food.

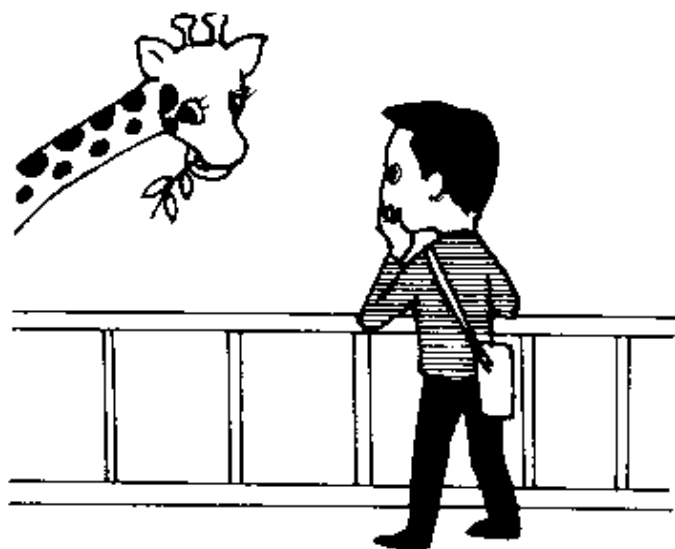
A: 好, 那我们去动物园。

Hǎo, nà wǒmen qù dòngwùyuán.

All right, we would go to the zoo then.

### (三) 动物园 The zoo

我们学校附近没有别的公园, 只有动物园。动物园在我们学校的西边。顺着马路一直往西走就到了, 对面是一个大商店。星期六和星期天我们没有课, 我和同学们经常一起去那儿玩。动物园不是很好玩, 那儿只有各种动物。可是看动物吃东西是很有意思的事。



Our school has got no other parks nearby except the zoo . The zoo is at the west side of our school. we would get there by following the road and walk in the west direction , There is a big store on the opposite. We have got no class on Saturday and Sunday, my classmates and I often go there and have fun together. The zoo is not too amusing, it has only got different animals. However, it is very interesting to watch animals feeding on their food.

### Ⅲ. 注释:      Annotation

1. “有、是、在”，这三个动词都表示存在。用“有、是”表示存在时，主语往往是表示方位的名词。用“在”表示存在时，主语经常是所叙述的人或事物。

“有、是、在”，these three verbs express the existence. when “有、是” are used to express existence, the subject is always nouns which indicate location. When “在” is used to express existence, the subject is often the person or object being narrated.

如：东边有一个图书馆      like: There is a library at the east side.

对面是一个公园      There is a park at the opposite

商店在学校旁边      The school is beside the store

2. “有多远”，“多”用在表示上限的形容词前，询问程度。  
“有多远”，“多”is used before adjectives which express the upper limits, inquire about the degree or level.



如：有多大      Like: how big  
      有多冷        how cold  
      有多贵        how expensive

3. “各种”，“各”是一个代词，它常和量词“种”一起修饰名词。  
“各种”，“各” is a pronoun, it is often used with measure word  
“种” to modify nouns.

如：各种书      like: all kinds of books  
      各种动物      all kinds of animals  
      各种商店      all kinds of stores

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

- (1) A: 劳驾。去银行怎么走?  
      B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
      A: 有多远?  
      B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
      A: 谢谢!  
      B: \_\_\_\_\_。
- (2) A: 请问，附近有银行吗?  
      B: 有，\_\_\_\_\_。  
      A: 请告诉我怎么走?  
      B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
      A: 商店在哪儿?  
      B: \_\_\_\_\_。
- (3) A: 你经常出去玩吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你经常去哪儿玩?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 动物园好玩吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(4) A: \_\_\_\_\_?

B: 我经常出去买东西。

A: \_\_\_\_\_?

B: 我经常买牛奶、面包、橘子。

A: \_\_\_\_\_?

B: 我和朋友一起去。

2. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

是 有 在

- (1) 学校 ( ) 动物园对面。
- (2) 银行旁边 ( ) 一个商店。
- (3) 那儿 ( ) 很多动物。
- (4) 飞机场 ( ) 东边。
- (5) 商店的旁边 ( ) 动物园。
- (6) 长城饭店 ( ) 马路左边。
- (7) 动物园的对面 ( ) 一个大商店。
- (8) 前面 ( ) 很多人。

3. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

(1) 飞机场有多远?

图书馆	大
外面	冷
咖啡	浓
橘子	甜

(2) 图书馆有各种书?

动物园	动物
那儿	面包
老师家	茶
餐厅	啤酒

V. 生词: New words

- |        |            |     |                    |
|--------|------------|-----|--------------------|
| 1. 劳驾  | láojià     | (动) | Excuse me          |
| 2. 附近  | fùjìn      | (名) | nearby             |
| 3. 公园  | gōngyuán   | (名) | park               |
| 4. 只   | zhǐ        | (副) | only               |
| 5. 动物园 | dòngwùyuán | (名) | zoo                |
| 6. 告诉  | gàosù      | (动) | tell               |
| 7. 顺着  | shùnzhē    | (动) | follow             |
| 8. 条   | tiáo       | (量) | <i>measureword</i> |
| 9. 东   | dōng       | (名) | east               |
| 10. 西  | xī         | (名) | west               |
| 11. 南  | nán        | (名) | south              |
| 12. 南边 | nánbian    | (名) | south side         |
| 13. 北  | běi        | (名) | north              |

14. 北边	běibian	(名)	northside
15. 对面	duìmiàn	(名)	opposite
16. 多	duō	(副)	how
17. 分钟	fēnzhōng	(名)	minute
18. 好玩儿	hǎowánr	(形)	amusing
19. 各	gè	(代)	different
20. 动物	dòngwù	(名)	animals
21. 东西	dōngxi	(名)	things

## 19. 生日 Birthday

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

181. 你每天早上几点起床?  
Nǐ měitiān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn qǐ chuáng?  
What time do you get up every morning?
182. 我每天早上六点三刻起床。  
Wǒ měitiān zǎoshang liù diǎn sān kè qǐ chuáng.  
I get up at a quarter to seven every morning.
183. 晚上一般十一点半睡觉。  
Wǎnshang yìbān shíyī diǎn bàn shuì jiào.  
I usually sleep at half past eleven in the night.
184. 中午大约十二点半吃饭。  
Zhōngwǔ dàyuē shí'èr diǎn bàn chī fàn.  
I would eat my lunch around half past twelve in the noon.
185. 今天几号?  
Jīntiān jǐ hào?  
What is today's date?
186. 今天是八月二十五号。  
Jīntiān shì bā yuè èrshíwǔ hào.  
Today is 25th of August.

187. 他的生日是哪天?

Tā de shēngri shì nǎ tiān?

When is his birthday?

188. 他的生日是五月二十七号。

Tā de shēngri shì wǔ yuè èrshíqī hào.

His birthday is on the 27th of may.

189. 他是一九七七年五月三十日出生的。

Tā shì yījiǔqīqī nián wǔ yuè sānshí rì chūshēng de.

He was born in 30, 5, 1997.

190. 他今年二十岁。

Tā jīnnián èrshí suì.

He is twenty years old this year.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 你每天早上几点起床?

Nǐ měitiān zǎoshang jǐ diǎn qǐ chuáng.

What time do you get up every morning?

B: 我每天早上六点三刻起床。

Wǒ měitiān zǎoshang liù diǎn sān kè qǐ chuáng.

I get up at a quarter to seven every morning.

A: 你起得很早, 晚上几点睡觉?

Nǐ qǐ de hěn zǎo, wǎnshang jǐ diǎn shuì jiào?

You get up very early. What time do you sleep at night?

B: 一般十一点半睡觉。

Yìbān shíyī diǎn bàn shuì jiào.

I usually sleep at half past eleven.

A: 中午休息吗?

Zhōngwǔ xiūxi ma?

Do you rest in the noon?

B: 中午没有时间休息。十二点半吃饭, 一点半开始工作。

Zhōngwǔ méiyǒu shíjiān xiūxi. Shí'èr diǎn bàn chī fàn, yì diǎn bàn kāishǐ gōngzuò.

There is no time to rest in the noon. Eat lunch at half past twelve, work begins at half past one.

A: 我喜欢中午休息一会儿。

Wǒ xǐhuan zhōngwǔ xiūxi yíhuìr.

I like to rest a while during noon.

B: 是睡午觉吗?

Shì shuì wǔjiào ma?

Is it an afternoon nap?

A: 是, 吃完中午饭, 我要睡一会儿。

Shì, chīwán zhōngwǔ fàn, wǒ yào shuì yíhuìr.

Yes, I have to sleep a while after taking my lunch.

B: 睡多长时间?

Shuì duō cháng shíjiān?

How long do you sleep?

A: 大约半个小时。

Dàyuē bàn ge xiǎoshí.

Approximately half an hour.

B: 我也喜欢吃完饭睡一会儿。不过是在星期天。

Wǒ yě xǐhuan chīwán fàn shuì yíhuìr. Búguò shì zài xīngqītiān.

I like to sleep a while after my meals too. It is only on Sunday.

(二)

A: 你们学校快开学了吧?

Nǐmen xuéxiào kuài kāi xué le ba?

Is your school opening soon?

B: 是, 九月一号开学。

Shì, jiǔ yuè yī hào kāi xué.

Yes, it is opened on the 1st of September

A: 今天是几号?

Jīntiān shì jǐ hào?

What is today's date?

B: 今天是八月二十五号

Jīntiān shì bā yuè èrshíwǔ hào.

Today is the 25th of August.

A: 一个学期有多长?

Yí ge xuéqī yǒu duō cháng?

How long is a semester?

B: 大约四个半月, 十八个星期。

Dàyuē sì ge bàn yuè, shíbā ge xīngqī.

It is approximately four and a half months, eighteen weeks.

A: 太长了, 一月才放假。

Tài cháng le, yī yuè cái fàng jià.



It is too long, you would have a holiday in January.

B: 我们每年都是一月十几号才放假。

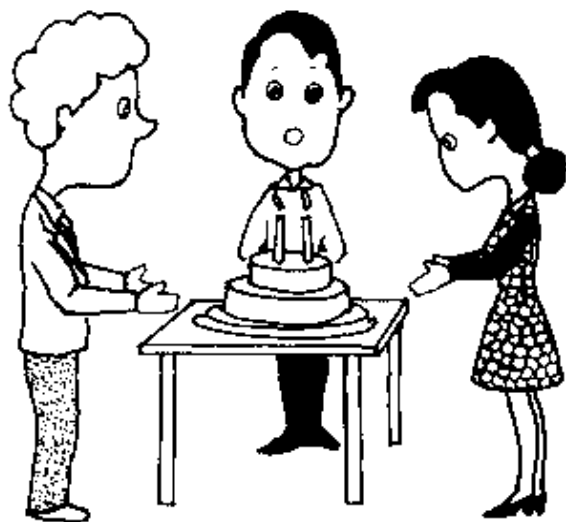
Wǒmen měi nián dōu shì yī yuè shí jǐ hào cái fàng jià.

We always have our holiday around the ten of January every year.

### (三) 他二十岁

He is already twenty years old

马学文是一九七七年五月三十日出生的。今天是五月二十五日，他的生日快要到了。他特别高兴，因为今年的五月三十日是他二十岁生日。那天是一个星期天，学校不上课。他打算先去参观一个博物馆，然后去公园玩，晚上请几位朋友去他家。他告诉朋友们，他家在学校附近，顺着马路一直往西走就到了。他七点钟在家等他们。



Ma Xuewen is born in 1977. 5. 30, Today is 25th of May, his birthday is coming soon. He is particularly happy, because 30th of May this year is his twentieth birthday. That day is a Sunday, there is no class. He plans to go to visit the museum first, go to the park and have fun then, invite a few friends to his place at night. He tells his friends, his place is at the school's nearby, they would get there by following the road and walk towards the west. He would wait for them at seven o'clock at home.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

- |           |                         |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1. 月份表示法: | To indicate the months: |
| 一月        | January                 |
| 二月        | February                |
| 三月        | March                   |
| 四月        | April                   |
| 五月        | May                     |
| 六月        | June                    |
| 七月        | July                    |
| 八月        | August                  |
| 九月        | September               |
| 十月        | October                 |
| 十一月       | November                |
| 十二月       | December                |
| 2. 年份表示法: | To indicate the years:  |
| 1980年     | 一九八零年 The year 1980     |

1905 年	一九零五年	The year 1905
1897 年	一八九七年	The year 1897
2000 年	二零零零年	The year 2000

3. 日期表示法: To indicate the date:

一日 (号)	First (1st)
二日 (号)	Second (2nd)
⋮	
十一日 (号)	Eleventh (11th)
十九日 (号)	Nineteenth (19th)
二十日 (号)	Twentieth (20th)
三十一日 (号)	Thirsty-first (31th)

“号”用于口语。 “号” used in the oral form.

4. 年、月、日连用 The joint usage of year, month, day  
1993年8月15日, 一九九三年八月十五日 1993. 8. 15

5. “才”, 副词“才”表示动作进行得慢、发生得晚。

“才”, adverb “才” expresses that the movements take place slowly.

例如:

你为什么才做了三个练习? Why do you only do three exercises?

他每天十点才起床。 He gets up only at ten'clock everyday.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

(1) 他的生日是三月三十一日号

一	十五
四	二
八	二十
十二	三十一

(2) 今天是七月十七日、星期二。

二	十一	星期一
五	一	星期日
九	十九	星期六
十一	二十一	星期五

2. 读出下列日期: Read out the following date

- (1) 18日      2月      1956年  
 (2) 10月      1日      1949年  
 (3) 25日      1997年      5月  
 (4) 1992年      星期五      2号      10月  
 (5) 星期四      1600年      19日      12月

3. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks.

每个 每天 每星期 每年 每位 每间

- (1) 他 (      ) 七点起床。  
 (2) 我 (      ) 都去拜访老师。  
 (3) (      ) 老师都会说英语。  
 (4) 我们 (      ) 都是一月放假。  
 (5) 他们 (      ) 有二十个小时课。  
 (6) (      ) 房间都住满了。  
 (7) 他 (      ) 博物馆都去过。

## V. 生词: New Words

1. 起床	qǐ chuáng		get up
2. 一般	yìbān	(副)	normally usually
3. 睡觉	shuì jiào		sleep
4. 大约	dàyuē	(副)	approximately
5. 日	rì	(名)	day
6. 生日	shēngrì	(名)	birthday
7. 月	yuè	(名)	month
8. 出生	chūshēng	(动)	born
9. 今年	jīnnián	(名)	this year
10. 岁	suì	(名)	year
11. 开始	kāishǐ	(动)	begin
12. 工作	gōngzuò	(名)	work
13. 完	wán	(动)	finish
14. 长	cháng	(形)	long
15. 才	cái	(副)	only
16. 不过	búguò	(连)	but
17. 请	qǐng	(动)	please
18. 马学文	Mǎ Xuéwén		Ma Xuewen

## 20. 坐火车 Taking train

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

191. 小姐，买一张火车票。

Xiǎojiě, mǎi yì zhāng huǒchē piào.

Miss, buy a train ticket

192. 你买去哪儿的火车票?

Nǐ mǎi qù nǎr de huǒchē piào?

what is the destination of the train ticket you are buying?

193. 你买哪天的火车票?

Ni mǎi nǎ tiān de huǒchē piào?

For what date do you want to buy the train ticket?

194. 我买3月2号去上海的火车票。

Wǒ mǎi sān yuè èr hào qù Shànghǎi de huǒchē piào.

I have bought the ticket on the 2nd March to Shanghai

195. 25号的票都卖完了。

Èrshíwǔ hào de piào dōu màiwán le.

Tickets for the 25th are all sold out

196. 请你明天再来。

Qǐng nǐ míngtiān zài lái.

Please come again tomorrow.

197. 每张票一百九十八块。

Měi zhāng piào yìbǎi jiǔshíbā kuài.

Each ticket is one hundred and ninety eight dollars.

198. 到上海要十七个小时。

Dào Shànghǎi yào shíqī ge xiǎoshí.

It takes seventeen hours to get to Shanghai.

199. 我喜欢坐火车旅行。

Wǒ xǐhuan zuò huǒchē lǚxíng.

I like to take a train to tour

200. 我喜欢坐在火车上看风景。

Wǒ xǐhuan zuò zài huǒchē shàng kàn fēngjǐng.

I like to enjoy the scenery in the train.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 小姐, 我买火车票。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ mǎi huǒchē piào.

Miss, I want to buy train ticket.

B: 你买去哪儿的火车票?

Nǐ mǎi qù nǎr de huǒchē piào?

What is the destination of the train ticket you are buying?

A: 我买去上海的火车票。

Wǒ mǎi qù Shànghǎi de huǒchē piào.

I want train ticket to Shanghai.

B: 哪天的?

Nǎ tiān de?

Which day's?

A: 明天的。

Míngtiān de.

Tomorrow.

B: 对不起, 明天的火车票都卖完了。

Duìbuqǐ, míngtiān de huǒchē piào dōu màiwán le.

Sorry, tomorrow's train tickets are all sold out.

A: 有后天的票吗?

Yǒu hòutiān de piào ma?

What about ticket for the day after tomorrow.

B: 后天的票还有, 你要几张?

Hòutiān de piào hái yǒu, nǐ yào jǐ zhāng?

There are tickets for the day after tomorrow. How many do you want?

A: 我要两张。

Wǒ yào liǎng zhāng.

I want two tickets.

B: 每张一百九十八块。

Měi zhāng yìbǎi jiǔshíbā kuài.

Every ticket is one hundred and ninety eight dollars.

A: 请等一会儿。

Qǐng děng yíhuìr.

Please wait for a while.

B: 你不买了么?



Nǐ bù mǎi le ma?

Are you not buying?

A: 不，我要买，可是我的钱不够。

Bù, wǒ yào mǎi, kěshì wǒ de qián bú gòu.

No, I want to buy, however, I have got insufficient money.

B: 那你明天再来吧。

Nà nǐ míngtiān zài lái ba.

Come again tomorrow then.

(二)

A: 劳驾，有到上海的火车票吗？

Láojià, yǒu dào Shànghǎi de huǒchē piào ma?

Excuse me, is there train tickets to shanghai?



B: 有, 你要哪一次的?

Yǒu, nǐ yào nǎ yí cì de?

Yes, which train do you want?

A: 哪次车最快?

Nǎ cì chē zuì kuài?

Which train is the fastest?

B: 十三次最快。

Shí sān cì zuì kuài.

Train No. 13 is the fastest.

A: 到上海要几个小时?

Dào Shànghǎi yào jǐ ge xiǎoshí?

How long does it take to get to Shanghai?

B: 大约十七个小时就到了。

Dàyuē shíqī ge xiǎoshí jiù dào le.

It would get there in approximate seventeen hours.

A: 哪次车最舒服?

Nǎ cì chē zuì shūfu?

Which train is the most comfortable?

B: 也是十三次。

Yě shì shí sān cì.

Train No. 13 too.

A: 好, 我要一张。

Hǎo, wǒ yào yì zhāng.

All right, I want a ticket.

### (三) 去上海旅行

#### To go to Shangshai for a tour

学校快放假了，David 打算坐火车去上海旅行，因为他很喜欢坐火车，很喜欢坐在火车上看外面的风景。去上海的火车每天有很多次，他不知道哪次最好。他去问王红，王红告诉他，十三次车最好，因为十三次车最快，十七个小时就到上海了。可是十三次车的车票比较贵，每张要一百九十八快。David 喜欢快一点儿的车，他要坐十三次火车去上海。

School is having a vacation soon David plans to take train to Shanghai for a tour because he likes to take a train and he like to enjoy the scenery from the train, There are many trains going to Shanghai everyday, he does not know which train is the best. He asks Wang Hong, Wang Hong tells him, train No. 13 is the best because it is the fastest, it would reach Shanghai in seventeen hours. However, train tickets for train No. 13 is relatively expensive, each ticket is one hunderd and ninety-eight dollars. David likes faster trains, he wants to take train No. 13 to Shanghai.

#### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “坐火车旅行”，这是一个连动词组，第二个动词性成分（旅行）表示第一个动作（坐火车）的目的。

“坐火车旅行” This is the verbal constructions in series phrase in Chinese, the second verbal element (旅行) expresses the objective of the first movement.

再如：去商店买东西      Like: Go to the store to buy things.  
去北京学汉语              Go to Beijing to learn chinese.

2. “在火车上”，“在……上”中间加名词后表示处所。

“在火车上”，add nouns between “在…上” to express locality.

如：在书上      Like: in the book  
在马路上          on the road  
在汉语课上      during Chinese class

#### IV. 练习：      Exercise

1. 完成对话：      Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 小姐，买一张票。

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 去北京的。

B: \_\_\_\_\_?

A: 明天的。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 你喜欢坐火车吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 为什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你经常坐火车旅行吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(3) A: 你要买火车票吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 哪次的?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 要几张?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(4) A: 学校要放假了吧?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你打算去哪儿旅行?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 坐火车去吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 翻译: Translate

(1) 早上 上午 中午 下午 晚上

(2) 今天 明天 后天

(3) 年 月 日 星期

(4) 元 角 分

(5) 东 西 南 北 左 右

(6) 前边 旁边 对面

(7) 那 那儿 哪 哪儿

IV. 生词: New Words

1. 小姐 xiaojie (名) Miss

2. 张 zhāng (量) *measure word*

3.	火车	huǒchē	(名)	train
4.	票	piào	(名)	ticket
5.	卖	mài	(动)	sell
	卖完	màiwán		sold out
6.	明天	míngtiān	(名)	follow
7.	来	lái	(动)	come
8.	百	bǎi	(数)	hundred
9.	旅行	lǚxíng	(动)	tour
10.	上	shàng		
	在……上	zài…shang		on top of
11.	风景	fēngjǐng	(名)	scenery view
12.	后天	hòutiān	(名)	the day after tomorrow
13.	够	gòu	(动)	enough
14.	次	cì	(量)	<i>measure word</i>
15.	快	kuài	(副)	fast
16.	上海	Shànghǎi		Shanghai

## 21. 饭店里住着各国客人 Accommodates Guests from various countris in the hotel

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

201. 中餐厅在一楼。

Zhōngcāntīng zài yī lóu.

Chinese restaurant is at the first level.

202. 西餐厅在二楼。

Xīcāntīng zài èr lóu.

Western restaurant is at the second level.

203. 这儿的西餐怎么样?

Zhèr de xīcān zěnmeyàng?

How is the western food here?

204. 法国猪排和意大利面条都很有名。

Fǎguó zhūpái hé Yìdàlì miàntiáo dōu hěn yǒumíng.

French pork chop and Italian spaghetti both are very well-known.

205. 房间里有冰箱和电视。

Fángjiān li yǒu bīngxiāng hé diànshì.

There are refrigerator and television in the room.

206. 房间里可以打国际电话。

Fángjiān li kěyǐ dǎ guójì diànhuà.

International calls can be made in the room.

207. 房间里有洗衣服口袋。

Fángjiān li yǒu xǐ yīfu kǒudai.

Laundry bags are available in the room.

208. 每天都可以洗衣服。

Měitiān dōu kěyǐ xǐ yīfu.

Clothes can be washed every day.

209. 饭店里住着各国客人。

Fàndiàn li zhùzhe gè guó kèren.

The hotel accommodates guests from various countries.

210. 一边喝咖啡，一边听音乐。

Yībiān hē kāfēi, yībiān tīng yīnyuè.

Drink coffee and listen to music at the same time.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 劳驾，我要一间双人房间。

Láojià, wò yào yì jiān shuāng rén fángjiān.

Excuse me, I want a double room.

B: 对不起，双人房间都住满了，您要单人房间吧。

Duìbuqǐ, shuāng rén fángjiān dōu zhùmǎn le, nín yào dān rén



fángjiān bā.

Sorry, double rooms are fully booked, please take a single room.

A: 单人房间里有冰箱和电视吗?

Dān rén fángjiān li yǒu bīngxiāng hé diànshì ma?

Are there refrigerator and television in the single room?

B: 有, 有冰箱, 也有电视。

Yǒu, yǒu bīngxiāng, yě yǒu diànshì.

Yes, there is refrigerator and television too.

A: 在房间里可以打国际电话吗?

Zài fángjiān li kěyǐ dǎ guójì diànhuà ma?

Can international calls be made in the room?

B: 可以。

Kěyǐ.

Sure.

A: 在哪儿洗衣服?

Zài nǎr xǐ yīfu?

Where can the clothes be washed?

B: 房间里有衣服口袋, 每天都可以洗。

Fángjiān li yǒu yīfu kǒudai, měi tiān dōu kěyǐ xǐ.

There are laundry bags in the room, clothes can be washed everyday.

A: 单人房间多少钱一天?

Dān rén fángjiān duō shǎo qián yì tiān?

How much is a single room for a day?

B: 每天一百二十元。

Měi tiān yībǎi èrshí yuán.

It is one hundred and twenty dollars every day.

A: 好，我要一间。

Hǎo, wǒ yào yì jiān.

All right, I will take a room.

B: 请跟我走，您的房间在五楼。

Qǐng gēn wǒ zǒu, nín de fángjiān zài wǔ lóu.

Please follow me, your room is at the fifth level.

A: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

(二)

A: 请问，餐厅在哪儿?

Qǐng wèn, cāntīng zài nǎr?

May I ask where is the restaurant?

B: 中餐厅还是西餐厅?

Zhōngcāntīng hái shì xīcāntīng?

Is it Chinese restaurant or western restaurant?

A: 中餐厅。

Zhōngcāntīng.

Chinese restaurant.

B: 中餐厅在一楼。

Zhōngcāntīng zài yī lóu.

Chinese restaurant is at the first level.

A: 这儿的西餐怎么样?

Zhèr de xīcān zěnmeyàng?

How is the western restaurant here?

B: 很不错, 法国猪排和意大利面条都很有名。

Hěn búcuò, Fǎguó zhūpái hé Yìdàlì miàntiáo dōu hěn yǒumíng.

Not too bad, French pork chop and Italian spaghetti both are very well-known.

A: 我要去试试, 我很喜欢意大利面条。

Wǒ yào qù shìshì, wǒ hěn xǐhuan Yìdàlì miàntiáo.

I want to try, I like Italian spaghetti very much.

B: 西餐厅在二楼。

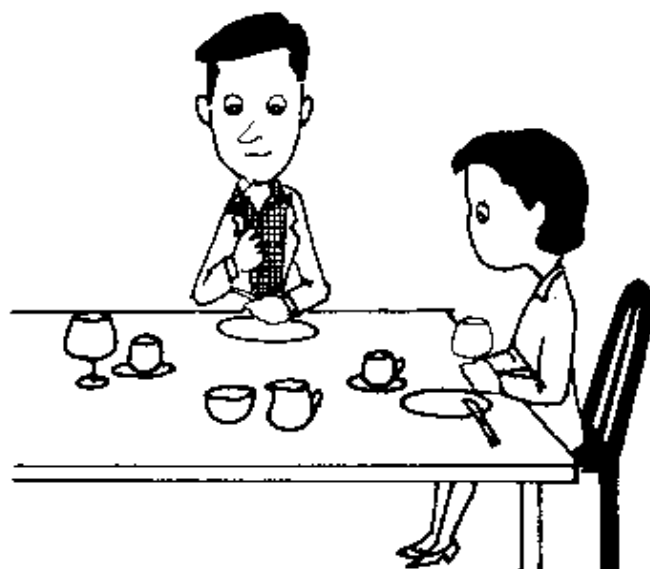
Xīcāntīng zài èr lóu.

Western restaurant is at the second level.

### (三) 北京饭店 Beijing Hotel

北京饭店是一个有名的饭店。饭店里住着各国客人, 日本人、英国人、德国人、美国人、法国人、意大利人……哪国人都有。饭店里有中餐厅, 也有西餐厅。中餐厅很不错。西餐厅也很好。在那儿, 你可以吃到法国猪排和意大利面条。在饭店的二楼还有一个咖啡厅, 在那儿喝咖啡很舒服。因为你可以一边喝咖啡, 一边听音乐, 那是一种很好的享受。

Beijing Hotel is a famous hotel. It accommodates guests from various countries, Japanese, English, German, American, French, Italian …… , guests from any country . The hotel has got Chinese



restaurant, and western restaurant is very good too. At the western restaurant, you can eat French pork chop and Italian spaghetti. There is a coffee house at the second level. It is comfortable to drink coffee there. Because you can drink coffee and listen to music at the same time, it is a great enjoyment.

注释： Annotation

1. “房间里”，“名词+里”表示处所，常作主语或宾语。

“房间里”，“名词+里”expresses locality often used as the subject or the object.

如：房间里有很多人。 Like: there are many people in the room.

我的钥匙在车里。 My key is in the car.

2. “着”，“动词+着”表示动作正在持续。“着”常和“正”一起用，构成“正+动词+着+宾语”式。

“着”，“动词+着” indicates the movement is still going on “着” is often used together with “正” to form the “正+verb+着+object” pattern.

如：他正吃着饭。 Like: He is eating

外面正刮着大风。 It is blowing strong wind outside.

3. “一边……，一边……”表示两个动作同时发生。

“一边…，一边…” indicates that two movements take place at the same time.

如：一边吃饭，一边听音乐。

Like: Eat and listen to music at the same time.

一边看电视，一边做练习。

Watch television and do the exercises at the same time.

### III. 练习: Exercises

1. 用“一边……，一边……”把下列词组连成句子: Use “一边…，一边…” to join the following phrases into sentence.

- |         |      |
|---------|------|
| (1) 看书  | 听音乐  |
| (2) 喝茶  | 看电视  |
| (3) 喝咖啡 | 看书   |
| (4) 看风景 | 听音乐  |
| (5) 吃饭  | 打电话  |
| (6) 洗衣服 | 学习生词 |

2. 用“××里”回答问题: Answer the following questions with “××里”

- (1) 房间里有什么人?
- (2) 饭店里住着什么人?
- (3) 这个商店里卖什么?
- (4) 西餐厅里有什么?
- (5) 图书馆里有什么?
- (6) 冰箱里有什么?

3. 用指定词回答问题: Answer the following questions with the given word.

- (1) 你去干什么? (打电话)
- (2) 晚上你想吃什么? (猪排)
- (3) 西餐厅在哪儿? (没有)
- (4) 面条怎么样? (不喜欢)
- (5) 我的房间在几楼 (十)

#### IV. 生词: New Words

- |        |              |     |   |
|--------|--------------|-----|---|
| 1. 中餐厅 | zhōngcāntīng | (名) | Chinese restaurant                            |
| 2. 楼   | lóu          | (名) | floor   |
| 3. 西餐厅 | xīcāntīng    | (名) | western restaurant                            |
| 4. 里   | lǐ           | (名) | a Chinese unit of length<br>(= 1/2 kilometre) |
| 5. 冰箱  | bīngxiāng    | (名) | refrigerator                                  |
| 6. 电视  | diànshì      | (名) | television                                    |

7.	打	dǎ	(动)	make
8.	国际	guójì	(名)	international
9.	电话	diànhuà	(名)	telephone
10.	洗	xǐ	(动)	wash
11.	衣服	yīfu	(名)	clothes
12.	口袋	kǒudai	(名)	pocket, bag
13.	这儿	zhèr	(代)	here
14.	猪排	zhūpái	(名)	pork chop
15.	面条	miàntiáo	(名)	spaghetti
16.	着	zhe	(助)	<i>particle</i>
17.	一边	yìbiān	(副)	at the same time
18.	意大利	Yìdàlì		Italy
19.	日本人	Rìběnrén		Japanese
20.	法国人	Fǎguó rén		French
21.	意大利人	Yìdàlì rén		Italian

## 22. 你的家真漂亮 your house is really pretty

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

211. 欢迎你到我家来玩。  
Huānyín nǐ dào wǒ jiā lái wán.  
Welcome you to my place and have fun.
212. 这些水果送给您。  
Zhè xiē shuǐguǒ sòng gěi nín.  
These fruits are for you.
213. 你的家真漂亮。  
Nǐ de jiā zhēn piàoliang.  
Your house is really pretty.
214. 你的家又漂亮又舒服。  
Nǐ de jiā yòu piàoliang yòu shūfu.  
Your house is pretty and comfortable too.
215. 我一定经常来。  
Wǒ yí dìng jīngcháng lái.  
I would definitely come often.
216. 请坐，喝点什么？



Qǐng zuò, hē diǎnr shénme?

Please sit. What would you drink?

217. 随便，什么都行。

Suíbiàn, shénme dōu xíng.

It is all right, anything would do.

218. 我饱了，不能再吃了。

Wǒ bǎo le, bù néng zài chī le.

I am full, I can eat no more.

219. 时间不早了，我应该走了。

Shíjiān bù zǎo le, wǒ yīnggāi zǒu le.

It's not early, I should get going.

220. 欢迎你经常来玩儿。

Huāngyíng nǐ jīngcháng lái wánr.

Welcome you to come often and have fun.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(到朋友家作客 To be a guest at friend's place)

A: 欢迎你们到我家来玩。

Huānyíng nǐmen dào wǒ jiā lái wánr.

Welcome all of you to have fun at my place.

B: 谢谢! 这些水果和这瓶酒送给你。

Xièxie! Zhèxiē shuǐguǒ hé zhè píng jiǔ sòng gěi nǐ.

Thank you! These fruits and this bottle of wine are for you.

A: 你太客气了!

Nǐ tài kèqì le!

You are too courteous!

B: 你的家真漂亮!

Nǐ de jiā zhēn piàoliang!

Your house is really pretty!

A: 是吗?谢谢!

Shì ma?xièxie!

Is it? Thank you!

B: 是的, 你的家又漂亮又舒服。

Shì de, nǐ de jiā yòu piàoliang yòu shūfu.

Yes, your house is pretty and comfortable too

A: 欢迎你经常来玩。

Huānyíng nǐ jīngcháng lái wánr.

Welcome you to come often and have fun.

B: 我一定经常来。

Wǒ yídìng jīngcháng lái.

I would definitely come often.

A: 请坐, 你喝点什么?

Qǐng zuò, nǐ hē diǎnr shénme?

Please sit, what would you drink?

B: 随便, 什么都行。

Suíbiàn, shénme dōu xíng.

It is all right, anything would do.

A: 喝一杯茶吧!

Hē yì bēi chá ba!

Drink a cup of tea then!

B: 好!

Hǎo!

All right!

(二)

(在朋友家吃饭      To have a meal at a friend's place)

A: 你喜欢吃饺子吗?

Nǐ xǐhuan chī jiǎozi ma?

Do you like to eat dumplings?

B: 很喜欢吃, 中国饭里, 我最喜欢吃饺子。

Hěn xǐhuan chī, Zhōngguó fàn lǐ, wǒ zuì xǐhuan chī jiǎozi.

Like it very much, in Chinese hotels I like the dumplings best.

A: 那你多吃一点儿。

Nà nǐ duō chī yìdiǎnr.

You should eat more then.

B: 我已经吃了很多了。

Wǒ yǐjīng chīle hěn duō le.

I have already eaten a lot.

A: 再吃点儿别的。

Zài chī diǎnr biéde.

Eat some others.

B: 我饱了, 不能再吃了。

Wǒ bǎo le, bù néng zài chī le.

I am full, can eat no more.

A: 吃点水果吧, 橘子又大又甜。

Chī diǎnr shuǐguǒ ba, júzi yòu dà yòu tián.

Eat some fruits then, the tangerines are large and sweet.

B: 好, 我吃一个。

Hǎo, wǒ chī yí ge.

All right, I eat one.

### (三) 在朋友家 At a friend's place

今天是星期天, 天气特别好, 不冷也不热。下午我和马学文一起去朋友家玩。朋友家在动物园附近, 不太远, 我们走了一会儿就到了。

我们在朋友家玩得很高兴, 我们一起喝茶。一起弹钢琴, 一起听音乐。大约七点钟, 我们开始吃晚饭。我们一边



喝啤酒，一边吃饺子。饺子又大又香，真好吃。然后我们又吃了水果。晚上我们还看了特别有意思的电视。

十点了，我对朋友说：“时间不早了，我们该走了。”朋友说：“欢迎你们经常来玩。”

Today is Sunday; The weather is particularly good. It is not too cold or not too hot. Ma Xuewen and I go together to a friend's place to have fun in the afternoon. My friend's place is near the zoo, it is not too far, we would get there in a while.

We had a good time at our friend's house, we drank tea, played the piano and listened to music together.

Around seven o'clock we began eating dinner. We drank beer and ate dumplings at the same time.

The dumplings are huge and tasty, is really delicious. We had fruits later. We watched a particularly interesting programme at night.

It is ten o'clock, I said to my friend; "It is not early, we should get going." Our friend said; "welcome both of you to come often and have fun."

## 注释: Annotation

1. “又……又……”，表示几种情况同时存在，“又”后经常加形容词。

“又…又…” indicates that a few situations exist at the same time;  
“又” is often followed by adjective.

如：又大又甜      Like: is big and sweet

        又好又便宜      is good and cheap

2. “下次”，意思是“下一次”，“次”在这里是一个量词。

“下一次” means the next time, “次” is a measure word in this case.

3. “多吃一点儿”，“形容词”“多”常加在动词前作状语，动词后边常用“一点儿”、“一些”、“一会儿”、“几个”。

“多吃一点”“adjective“多”is often used before verbs as adverbial adjunct. “一点”“一些”“一会儿”“几个” often followed after verbs.

如：多等一会      Like: wait for a while more

        多买一些      buy some more

        多吃几个      eat a few more

4. “已经”，是用来表示动作完成的副词，常和“了”一起用。

“已经”， is an adverb used to express the completion of movements, often used with “了”。

如：已经买了      Like; have already bought

已经去过了      have already been there

5. “该走了”，“该”是“应该”的省略说法，口语中常用。

“该走了”，“该” is the simplified form of “应该” commonly used in oral form.

### Ⅲ. 练习：      Exercise

1. 用“又……又……”把下列组成句子：      Use “又…又” to join the following as complete sentences

(1) 贵      不舒服

(2) 便宜      好

(3) 大      甜

(4) 漂亮      舒服

(5) 快      好

2. 替换练习：      Exchange exercises

(1) 你的身体真好。

家	舒服
书	多
汉语	好

(2) 他已经走了。

我	起床
老师	开始工作
学校	放假

3. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

多买一些      多等一会儿      多吃一点儿      多玩一会儿

- (1) 今天的饺子很好吃, 你 (      )  
(2) 你 (      ), 他就要来了。  
(3) 天气真好, 我们 (      ) 吧!  
(4) 我喜欢吃这种橘子, 你 (      )。

IV. 生词: New Words

1. 些	xiē	(量)	<i>measure word</i>
一些	yìxiē	(名)	some
2. 水果	shuǐguǒ	(动)	fruits
3. 送	sòng	(动)	give
4. 给	gěi	(动)	give
送给	sòng gěi		give
5. 真	zhēn	(副)	really
6. 漂亮	piàoliang	(形)	pretty
7. 又	yòu	(副)	again
8. 一定	yídìng	(副)	definitely
9. 坐	zuò	(动)	sit
10. 随便	suíbiàn	(形)	casual
11. 饱	bǎo	(形)	full
12. 饺子	jiǎozi	(名)	dumpling
13. 已经	yǐjīng	(副)	already
14. 好吃	hǎochī	(形)	delicious
15. 晚饭	wǎnfàn	(名)	dinner



## 23. 买衣服 Buying clothes

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

221. 这件衣服很漂亮。

Zhè jiàn yīfu hěn piàoliang.

This piece of clothing is very pretty.

222. 绿颜色对你很合适。

Lǜ yánsè duì nǐ hěn héshì.

Green colour is very suitable for you.

223. 我不喜欢红颜色的。

Wǒ bù xǐhuan hóng yánsè de.

I do not like red coloured ones.

224. 这件是小号的。

Zhè jiàn shì xiǎo hào de.

This is the small size.

225. 我应该穿中号的。

Wǒ yīnggāi chuān zhōng hào de.

I should wear the medium size.

226. 这条裙子的颜色、样子都好看。

Zhè tiáo qúnzi de yánsè, yàngzi dōu hǎokàn.

The colour and pattern of this shirt are nice-looking.

227. 这条裙子太短了!

Zhè tiáo qúnzi tài duǎn le!

This skirt is too short.

228. 我喜欢穿长一点的裙子。

Wǒ xǐhuan chuān cháng yìdiǎnr de qúnzi.

I like to wear skirts of longer length.

229. 这条比那条长。

Zhè tiáo bǐ nà tiáo cháng.

This is longer than that.

230. 有的太大，有的太小。

Yǒude tài dà, yǒude tài xiǎo.

Some are too big, some are too small.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一) 在商店买衣服 To buy clothes at a store

A: 小王，这件衣服怎么样?

Xiǎo Wáng, zhè jiàn yīfu zěnmeyàng?

Xiao Wang, How about this piece of clothing?

B: 不错，多少钱?

Búcuò, duōshao qián?

Not too bad, how much?

A: 五十二块八。

Wǔshí'èr kuài bā.

Fifty two dollars and eighty cents.

B: 又便宜又漂亮, 你买一件吧!

Yòu piányi yòu piàoliang, nǐ mǎi yí jiàn ba!

It's cheap and pretty. Are you buying one!

A: 颜色怎么样?是绿色的。

Yánsè zěnmeyàng?Shì lǜsè de.

How is the colour? It is green coloured.

B: 绿颜色对你很合适。

Lǜ yánsè duì nǐ hěn héshì.

Green colour is very suitable for you.

A: 是吗?我试试。

Shì ma? Wǒ shìshi.

Is it? I would try.

B: 真漂亮, 买吧!

Zhēn piàoliang, mǎi ba!

It is really pretty, buy then!

A: 这件是小号的, 我穿有点小。

Zhè jiàn shì xiǎo hào de, wǒ chuān yǒudiǎnr xiǎo.

This piece is small size, it is a little too small for me.

B: 你试试中号的, 中号的一定合适。

Nǐ shìshi zhōng hào de, zhōng hào de yí dìng héshì.

You can try medium size, medium would definitely be suitable.

A: 中号只有红颜色的, 我不喜欢。

Zhōng hào zhǐ yǒu hóng yánsè de, wǒ bù xǐhuan.

Medium size have got only red coloured ones, I do not like it.

B: 你买衣服真麻烦。

Nǐ mǎi yīfu zhēn máfan.

You are such a trouble when you buy clothings.

## (二) 买裙子 Buying skirts

A: 这两条裙子哪条好?

Zhè liǎng tiáo qúnzi nǎ tiáo hǎo?

What of these two skirts is better?

B: 我喜欢这条, 颜色、样子都好看。

Wǒ xǐhuan zhè tiáo, yánsè, yàngzi dōu hǎokàn.

I like this piece, the colour and pattern are very nice-looking.

A: 我不喜欢这条, 这条裙子太短了。

Wǒ bù xǐhuan zhè tiáo, zhè tiáo qúnzi tài duǎn le.

I do not like this skirt, is too short.

B: 现在穿短裙子的人很多。

Xiànzài chuān duǎn qúnzi de rén hěn duō.

There are many people who wear short skirts nowadays.

A: 我知道, 可是我还是喜欢穿长一点的裙子。

Wǒ zhīdao, kěshi wǒ hái shì xǐhuan chuān cháng yìdiǎnr de qúnzi.

I know, however, I still prefer longer skirts.

B: 这条比那条长, 你喜欢这条吗?

Zhè tiáo bǐ nà tiáo cháng, nǐ xǐhuan zhè tiáo ma?

This piece is longer than that piece. Do you like this piece?

A: 也不喜欢, 颜色不好看。

Yě bù xǐhuan, yánsè bù hǎokàn.

I do not like it too. The colour is not nice looking.



B: 你喜欢什么颜色的衣服?

Nǐ xǐhuan shénme yánsè de yīfu?

What colour of clothings do you like?

A: 我喜欢淡黄色的。

Wǒ xǐhuan dànhuángsè de.

I like light yellow ones.

### (三) 买衣服

小王喜欢买衣服，特别喜欢买便宜衣服。每个星期天她都去商店，看见便宜的衣服就买。她家里有很多衣服，可是合适的衣服不多。有的太大，有的太小，有的太长，有

的太短。有的颜色不好看，有的样子不好看。现在小王明白了，买便宜的衣服没有好处。她打算卖掉一些旧衣服，然后去买合适的新衣服。

Xiao Wang likes to buy clothes, particularly like to buy cheap clothes. Every Sunday she goes to the store, would buy cheap clothes whenever she sees them, she has got a lot of clothes at home, however, not many can still be worn, some are too big, some are too small, some are too long, some are too short, some of the colours are not nice, some of the patterns are not nice-looking. Xiao Wang understands now, it is of no use to buy cheap clothes. she plans to sell some old clothings, and buy new clothes which are suitable to be worn.

## 注释： Annotation

1. “这条比那条长”。“A 比 B+形容词”是最常用的一种表示比较的句式。

“这条比那条长” “A 比 B+形容词” is the most commonly used sentence form expressing comparison.

如：这件比那件大 Like: this piece is larger than that piece.

这本书比那本书贵 this book is more expensive than that book

他比我努力 he is more hardworking than me

2. “有的……，有的……”，“有的”可以单用，也可以几个一起连用，表示人或事物中的一部分。

“有的…，有的…”，“有的” can be used individually, can be used

jointly to express parts of a person or an object.

如：有的在看书，有的在做练习

Like: Some are reading, some are doing exercise.

有的大，有的小      Some are big, some are small

3. “红色”，“色”是“颜色”的省略，其他如：“绿色、黄色”。

“红色”，“色” is the simplified form of colour, others: 绿色  
“green colour”, 黄色 “yellow colour”.

### Ⅲ. 练习: Exercises

1. 在下列句子里填上合适的形容词:      Fill in the blanks with appropriate adjectives.

- (1) 这杯咖啡比那杯咖啡 (      )。
- (2) 这本书比那本书 (      )。
- (3) 这件衣服比那件衣服 (      )。
- (4) 这条裙子比那条裙子 (      )。
- (5) 听音乐比做作业 (      )。
- (6) 饺子比面条 (      )。

2. 用“有的……有的……”把下列词组连成句子:      Use “有的…有的” to join the following phrases as complete sentences

- (1) 这些衣服      太长      太短
- (2) 这些房间      太大      太小
- (3) 朋友们      喜欢喝红茶      喜欢喝绿茶
- (4) 客人们      吃饺子      吃面条
- (5) 同学们      听现代音乐      听古典音乐

(6) 我们            吃中餐            吃西餐

3. 翻译:            Translate

- |        |    |    |   |   |   |
|--------|----|----|---|---|---|
| (1) 红  | 绿  | 黄  |   |   |   |
| (2) 大号 | 中号 | 小号 |   |   |   |
| (3) 好玩 | 好吃 | 好看 |   |   |   |
| (4) 长  | 短  | 大  | 小 | 新 | 旧 |

IV. 生词:            New Words

- |         |             |     |             |
|---------|-------------|-----|-------------|
| 1. 件    | jiàn        | (量) | piece       |
| 2. 颜色   | yánsè       | (名) | colour      |
| 3. 小    | xiǎo        | (形) | small       |
| 4. 穿    | chuān       | (动) | wear        |
| 5. 中(号) | zhōng (hào) | (名) | medium      |
| 6. 裙子   | qúnzi       | (名) | skirt       |
| 7. 样子   | yàngzi      | (名) | look        |
| 8. 好看   | hǎokàn      | (形) | nicelooking |
| 9. 短    | duǎn        | (形) | short       |
| 10. 比   | bǐ          | (动) | compare     |
| 11. 有的  | yǒude       | (代) | some        |
| 12. 黄   | huáng       | (形) | yellow      |
| 13. 卖掉  | màidiào     | (动) | sell        |
| 14. 旧   | jiù         | (形) | old         |
| 15. 新   | xīn         | (形) | new         |
| 16. 小王  | Xiǎo Wáng   |     | Xiao Wang   |



## 24. 春天到了 Spring is here

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

231. 春天到了。

Chūntiān dào le.

Spring is here.

232. 你最喜欢哪个季节?

Nǐ zuì xǐhuan nǎ ge jìjié?

Which season do you like better?

233. 天气渐渐暖和了。

Tiānqì jiànjiàn nuǎnhuo le.

The weather is getting warmer gradually.

234. 各种花都开了。

Gè zhǒng huā dōu kāi le.

All types of flowers are all blooming.

235. 树变成了绿色。

Shù biànchéng le lǜsè.

The trees are turning green.

236. 风是够大的!

Fēng shì gòu dà de!

The wind is really strong!

237. 阳光很温和。

Yáng guāng hěn wēnhé.

The sun shine is very moderate.

238. 秋天是旅游的好季节。

qiūtiān shì lǚyóu de hǎo jìjié.

Autumn is a good season for travelling.

239. 气温不高也不低。

Qìwēn bù gāo yě bù dī.

The temperature is not high and not too low.

240. 今天是十八度。

Jīntiān shì shí bā dù.

Today is eighteen degree cen.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一) 两位朋友在聊天

Two friends are chatting

A: 一年有四个季节, 你最喜欢哪个季节?

Yì nián yǒu sì ge jìjié, nǐ zuì xǐhuan nǎ ge jìjié?

Each year has got four seasons. Which season do you like best?

B: 我最喜欢春天。

Wǒ zuì xǐhuan chūntiān.

I like spring best.

A: 为什么?

Wèi shénme?

Why?

B: 因为春天天气渐渐暖和了, 各种花都开了, 很漂亮。

Yīnwèi chūntiān tiānqì jiànjian nuǎnhuo le, gè zhǒng huār dōu kāi le, hěn piàoliang.

Because the weather during spring gets warmer gradually. Every type of flower have already bloomed. It is very pretty.

A: 春天经常刮风, 风还特别大, 我不喜欢春天。

Chūntiān jīngcháng guā fēng, fēng hái tèbié dà, wǒ bù xǐhuan chūntiān.

Winds are often blown during spring, the winds are particularly strong, I do not like spring.

B: 风是够大的, 不过, 刮风的时间不长。

Fēng shì gòu dà de, búguò, guā fēng de shíjiān bù cháng.

The winds are indeed strong, however, the duration of the blowing of the winds are not long.

A: 我喜欢秋天。

Wǒ xǐhuan qiūtiān.

I like autumn.

B: 秋天不刮风吗?

Qiūtiān bù guā fēng ma?

Are the winds not blown during autumn?

A: 秋天也刮风, 可是秋天的风比春天少。

Qiūtiān yě guā fēng, kěshì qiūtiān de fēng bǐ chūntiān shǎo.

The winds blown during autumn are lesser than during spring.

B: 秋天天气渐渐冷了, 也没有花了。

Qiūtiān tiānqì jiànjian lěng le, yě méiyǒu huār le.

The weather during autumn gets colder gradually. There are no flowers left too.

A: 可是秋天阳光很温和, 气温不高也不低, 是旅游的好季节。

Kěshì qiūtiān yángguāng hěn wēnhé, qìwēn bù gāo yě bù dī, shì lǚyóu de hǎo jìjié.

However the sunshine during autumn is very moderate. The temperature is not too high and not too low. It is a good season for travelling.

## (二)

A: 今天气温多少度?

Jīntiān qìwēn duōshao dù?

What is today's temperature?

B: 十八度。

Shíbā dù.

18°C.

A: 昨天是二十二度, 今天比昨天冷一点儿。

Zuótiān shì èrshí'èr dù, jīntiān bǐ zuótiān lěng yìdiǎnr.

Yesterday was 22°C, Today is colder than yesterday.

B: 是的, 昨天晚上下雨了。

Shìde, zuótiān wǎnshang xià yǔ le.

Yes, it was raining last night.

A: 雨下得大吗?

Yǔ xià de dà ma?

Was the rain heavy?

B: 够大的。

Gòu dà de.

It was heavy indeed.

A: 今年秋天的雨水真多。

Jīnnián qiūtiān de yǔshuǐ zhēn duō.

This year's autumn has got really sufficient rain fall.

B: 是够多的。今天外边比较冷，你多穿一点儿衣服。

Shì gòu duō de. Jīntiān wàibian bǐjiào lěng, nǐ duō chuān yìdiǎnr yīfu.

It is sufficient indeed. Today it is colder outside, you should put on more clothing.

A: 好，谢谢！

Hǎo, xièxiè!

All right. Thank you!

### (三) 春天到了

春天到了，天气渐渐暖和了。公园里，各种花都开了，红的、绿的、黄的……真好看。马路旁边的树也变成了绿色。太阳很好，阳光很温和，气温不高也不低，真是旅游的好季节。

孩子们非常高兴，他们穿着漂亮的衣服出去玩，有的在公园里看花，有的去参观博物馆，有的去动物园看动物，还有的去书店买有意义的书……。

他们喜欢春天，他们在春天里玩得高兴极了。



Spring is here , the weather is getting warmer gradually , In the park all kinds of flowers have bloomed , red ones, green ones, yellow ones... , it is really nice looking. The trees at the roadside have turned green too. The sun is very good , this sunshine is very moderate, the temperature is not too high and not too low, it is really a good season for travelling.

The children are very happy , they have put on pretty clothings to go and have fun , some are watching at the flowers in the park , some have gone to visit the museum, some have gone to the zoo to look at the animals, the others go to the book store and buy meaningful books.

## 注释: Annotation

1. “够大的”, “够……的”中间加形容词, 表示程度比较高, 多用于口语。

“够大的”, add adjective in “够…的” to express the degree or level is high, It is usually used in oral form.

如: 够冷的 like: (It's ) cold indeed

够便宜的 (It's) cheap indeed

够舒服的 (It's) comfortable indeed

2. “不过,” “不过”的意思与“可是”相同, 但是程度比“可是”轻, 且多用于口语。

The meaning of “不过” is similar to that of “可是”, but the usage of degree or level is moderate compared to “可是”. It's usually used in oral form.

## Ⅲ、练习: Exercises

1. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

够热的 够长的 够大的 够漂亮的 够贵的 够舒服的

- (1) 这条裙子 ( )。
- (2) 昨天的晚上的雨 ( )。
- (3) 你的家真 ( )。
- (4) 这本书真 ( )。
- (5) 今天的天气 ( )。

(6) 这间房间 ( )。

2. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 外面天气怎么样?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 风大吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 冷不冷?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 今天多少度?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 够冷的。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我们不要去园了。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(3) A: 你喜欢哪个季节?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 为什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我不喜欢。风太大。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(4) A: 公园里的花开了吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 好看吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 树呢?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。



#### IV. 生词:           New Words

1.	春天	chūntiān	(名)	spring
2.	季节	jìjié	(名)	season
3.	渐渐	jiànjiàn	(副)	gradually
4.	暖和	nuǎnhuo	(形)	warm
5.	开	kāi	(动)	open bloom
6.	树	shù	(名)	tree
7.	变成	biànchéng	(动)	turn into
8.	够	gòu	(形)	indeed
9.	阳光	yángguāng	(名)	sunshine
10.	温和	wēnhé	(形)	moderate
11.	秋天	qiūtiān	(名)	autumn
12.	旅游	lǚyóu	(名)	travel tour
13.	气温	qìwēn	(名)	temperature
14.	高	gāo	(形)	high
15.	低	dī	(形)	low
16.	度	dù	(名)	degree
17.	孩子	háizi	(名)	children
18.	雨水	yǔshuǐ	(名)	rainwater, rainfall, rain
19.	书店	shūdiàn	(名)	bookstore

## 25. 吃药和锻炼

### Taking medicine and exercises

#### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

241. 我有点儿咳嗽。

Wǒ yǒudiǎnr késou.

I have got a slight cough.

242. 量量体温吧!

Liángliang tǐwēn ba!

Measure the body temperature then!

243. 他发烧了, 三十八度五。

Tā fāshāo le, sānshíbā dù wǔ.

He is having a fever, 38.5C°.

244. 不要紧, 吃点儿药就好了。

Bú yào jǐn, chī diǎnr yào jiù hǎo le.

He's all right, he would be fine after taking some medicine.

245. 他最近身体一直不好。

Tā zuìjìn shēntǐ yìzhí bù hǎo.

His health has not been very good recently.

246. 去医院看看病吧!

Qù yīyuàn kànkàn bìng ba!

Go to the hospital and see a doctor then!

247. 工作比较忙，太累了。

Gāngzuò bǐjiào máng, tài lèi le.

Work is busier, too tired.

248. 你要注意早点休息。

Nǐ yào zhùyì zǎo diǎnr xiūxi.

You should take note of resting earlier.

249. 怎样才能保持身体健康?

Zěnmé cái néng bǎochí shēntǐ jiànkāng?

How can one maintain his health?

250. 保持精神愉快，不要生气。

Bǎochí jīnshén yúkuài, bú yào shēngqì.

Keep your spirits joyful, do not get angry.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一) 在医院

A: (医生) 你哪儿不舒服?

Nǐ nǎr bù shūfu?

(Doctor) Where do you feel uncomfortable?

B: (病人) 我感冒了，头很疼。

Wǒ gǎnmào le, tóu hěn téng.

(Patient) I have got a flu, my head hurts badly.

A: 咳嗽吗?

Késou ma?

Do you cough?

B: 有一点儿。

Yǒu yìdiǎnr.

A little.

A: 几天了?

Jǐ tiān le?

How many days has  
it been?

B: 两天了。

Liǎng tiān le.

It has lasted two  
days.



A: 量过体温吗?

Liángguo tǐwēn mā?

Have you taken your  
body temperature?

B: 量了，我不发烧，三十六度五。

Liáng le, wǒ bù fāshāo, sānshíliù dù wǔ.

Yes, I do not have a fever, 36.5C°.

A: 不要紧，吃点儿药就好了。

Bú yào jǐn, chī diǎnr yào jiù hǎo le.

It is all right. You would be all right after taking some  
medicine.

B: 中药，还是西药?

Zhōngyào, háishi xīyào?

Is it Chinese medicine or western medicine?

A: 吃中药吧, 中药比较温和。

Chī zhōngyào bā, zhōngyào bǐjiào wēnhé.

Take Chinese medicine then. Chinese medicine is more moderate.

B: 好, 谢谢!

Hǎo, xièxie!

All right, Thank you!

A: 你还要多喝水, 多吃水果。

Nǐ hái yào duō hē shuǐ, duō chī shuǐguǒ.

You should drink more water and eat more fruits.

B: 我知道了。

Wǒ zhīdao le.

I learn it.

## (二) 在办公室谈话

### Having a conversation at the office

A: 我最近身体一直不好。

Wǒ zuìjìn shēntǐ yìzhí bù hǎo.

My health has not been very good recently.

B: 怎么不好?

Zěnmé bù hǎo?

How is it not well?

A: 不想吃饭, 睡觉也不好。

Bù xiǎng chī fàn, shuì jiào yě bù hǎo.

I do not think of eating, have not been sleeping well.

B: 是不是工作太累了?

Shì bu shì gōngzuò tài lèi le?

Is the work too tiring?

A: 最近比较忙, 每天晚上十二点才能睡觉。

Zuìjìn bǐjiào máng, měi tiān wǎnshàng shí'èr diǎn cái néng shuì jiào.

It is busier recently. I could only sleep at midnight every night.

B: 你要注意早点儿休息。

Nǐ yào zhùyì zǎo diǎnr xiūxi.

You should take note of resting earlier.

A: 我一定注意。

Wǒ yídìng zhùyì.

I would definitely take note.

B: 再去医院看看病, 吃点儿药。

Zài qù yīyuàn kànkàn bìng, chī diǎnr yào.

Go to the hospital and see a doctor too, take some medicine.

A: 我不喜欢吃药, 注意休息就行了。

Wǒ bù xǐhuan chī yào, zhùyì xiūxi jiù xíng le.

I do not like to take medicine, thinking more of rest would be fine.

### (三) 保持身体健康

怎么才能保持身体健康?我的办法是, 第一, 天气冷了, 多穿衣服, 天气热了, 少穿衣服。第二, 多喝水、多

吃水果、少喝酒、少吃药。第三，工作不能太累，注意休息。第四，经常出去玩，或者去公园，或者参观博物馆，或者朋友一起吃饭，或者……。第五，保持精神愉快，不要生气。

我的朋友对我说，还应该保持经常锻炼身体。可是不锻炼身体，身体也非常好，什么病也没有。

How can one maintain his health? My way is like this first, put more clothes when the weather is cold, put on fewer clothes when the weather is hot. Secondly, drink more water, eat more fruits, drink less alcohol and take less medicine. Thirdly, work should not be tiring, rest should be taking note of. Fourthly, go out often, go to the park, or visit the museum, or have meals with friends or... Fifthly, keep your spirits joyful, do not get angry.

My friend told me one should often train his body. However, I do not train my body. My health is very good too. I have got no illness at all.

## 注释： Annotation

1. “一直”，有两个意思，一个表示方向（一直往东走），另一个意思表示时间，从过去某一时间到现在从未间断。

“一直” has got two meanings, one is to express direction (walk toward the east), the other is to express time, the lapse between now and then.

如：从十岁开始 Like: He has been learning Chinese from ten  
他一直学习汉语 years old.

晚上他一直听音乐 He has been listening to music all night.

2. “早点儿休息”，是“早一点儿休息”的省略。“早、晚、快、慢”都可以和“点儿”一起用，后面再加上动词，表示动作发生得“早、晚、快、慢”。

“早点儿休息”，is the simplified form of “早一点儿休息。”“早”“晚”“快”“慢”can be used together with“点儿”，verbs are added often to express whether the movements have taken place “early, late, quick, slow”.

如：早点儿走 Like: go earlier

晚点儿去 go later

3. “或者”，“或者”是表示选择的连词，用在陈述句里。可以单独使用，也可以几个连用。

“或者”，“或者” is conjunction to express alternative, used in declarative sentences. Can be used independently, or can be used jointly.

单用：你去或者我去都可以。

Independently: It is all right whether it is you or me who is going.

连用：或者红的，或者绿的，我都喜欢。

Jointly: I like it whether it is red or green.

### Ⅲ. 练习: Exercises

1. 把下列词连成句子:

To join the following words as complete sentences.

- (1) 他 不好 身体 一直



- (2) 发烧 他 应该 一直 医院 去 看病  
 (3) 附近 住在 一直 他 学校  
 (4) 往东走 去 一直 动物园 应该  
 (5) 上午 在 一直 图书馆 他 看书

2. 完成对话: complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 你的脸很红, 发烧了吧?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 是感冒吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 去医院看看病吧?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 我头有点儿痛, 感冒了。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我不发烧。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 多喝水, 注意休息, 再吃点儿药。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

3. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

(1) 你早点儿起床。

晚	睡觉
快	吃
慢	喝

(2) 他应该慢点儿说?

早	去医院
快	去打电话
晚	再洗衣服

#### IV. 生词:           New Words

- |     |    |          |     |                  |
|-----|----|----------|-----|------------------|
| 1.  | 咳嗽 | késou    | (动) | cough            |
| 2.  | 量  | liáng    | (动) | measure          |
| 3.  | 体温 | tǐwēn    | (名) | body temperature |
| 4.  | 发烧 | fāshāo   | (动) | fever            |
| 5.  | 要紧 | yàojǐn   | (形) | serious          |
| 6.  | 药  | yào      | (名) | medicine         |
|     | 中药 | zhōngyào | (名) | Chinese medicine |
|     | 西药 | xīyào    | (名) | western medicine |
| 7.  | 最近 | zuìjìn   | (副) | recently         |
| 8.  | 比较 | bǐjiào   | (副) | rather           |
| 9.  | 忙  | máng     | (形) | busy             |
| 10. | 累  | lèi      | (形) | tired            |
| 11. | 注意 | zhùyì    | (动) | pay attention    |
| 12. | 保持 | bǎochí   | (动) | maintain         |
| 13. | 精神 | jīngshén | (名) | spirit           |
| 14. | 愉快 | yúkuài   | (形) | happy            |
| 15. | 生气 | shēngqì  | (形) | angry            |
| 16. | 水  | shuǐ     | (名) | water            |
| 17. | 办法 | bànfǎ    | (名) | ways means       |
| 18. | 或者 | huòzhě   | (连) | or               |
| 19. | 锻炼 | duànliàn | (动) | train            |

## 26. 点菜 Ordering food

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

251. 您吃点儿什么?这是菜单。

Nín chī diǎnr shénme?zhè shì càidān.

What would you like to eat ?This is the menu.

252. 这里什么最有名?

Zhèlǐ shěnmē zuì yǒumíng?

What is most famous here?

253. 味道怎么样?

Wèidào zěnmeyàng?

How is the taste?

254. 辣子鸡丁和麻辣豆腐都不错。

Làzǐjīdīng hé málàdòufu dōu búcuò.

Diced chicken with chilli and spicy beancurd are not bad.

255. 我最喜欢吃鱼和素菜。

Wǒ zuì xǐhuan chī yú hé sùcài.

I like fish and vegetarian dish best.

256. 我不能吃辣的。

Wǒ bù néng chī là de.

I cannot take spicy ones.

257. 请给我一碗米饭。

Qǐng gěi wǒ yì wǎn mǐfàn.

Please give me a bowl of rice.

258. 这碗鸡蛋汤有点儿咸。

Zhè wǎn jīdàn tāng yǒudiǎnr xián.

This bowl of eggs soup is slightly salty.

259. 请等一会儿，马上就好。

Qǐng děng yíhuìr, mǎshàng jiù hǎo.

Please wait for a while it would be ready soon.

260. 客人比较多，没有坐位了。

Kèren bǐjiào duō, méiyǒu zuòwèi le.

There are more customers, no seats available.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一) 在饭店点菜

#### Ordering food at a restaurant

A: 您吃点儿什么?这是菜单。

Nín chī diǎnr shénme?zhè shì càidān.

What would you like to eat? This is the menu.

B: 这里什么菜最有名?

Zhèlǐ shénme cài zuì yǒumíng?

what is most famous here?

A: 辣子鸡丁和麻辣豆腐都不错。

Làzǐjīdīng hé málàdòufu dōu búcuò.



Diced chicken with chilli and spicy beancurd are not bad.

B: 我喜欢吃豆腐，可是不能吃辣的。

Wǒ xǐhuan chī dòufu, kěshì bù néng chī là de.

I like eating beancurd, however, I cannot take spicy one.

A: 那您吃糖醋鱼吧，也很好。

Nà nín chī tāngcùyú ba, yě hěn hǎo.

You can try sweet sour fish then, it is very good too.

B: 好，我喜欢吃鱼。

Hǎo, wǒ xǐhuan chī yú.

All right. I like eating fish.

A: 还要别的吗？

Hái yào biéde ma?

Do you want others?

B: 还要一个素菜。

Hái yào yí ge sùcài.

And a vegetarian dish.

A: 喝什么?

Hē shénme?

What would you like to drink?

B: 一杯橘子水。

Yì bēi júzi shuǐ.

A glass of tangerine juice.

A: 要汤吗?

Yào tāng mā?

Any soup?

B: 一碗鸡蛋汤, 再要一碗米饭。

yì wǎn jīdàn tāng, zài yào yì wǎn mǐfàn.

A bowl of egg soup and a bowl of rice.

A: 请等一会, 马上就好。

Qǐng děng yíhuìr, mǎshàng jiù hǎo.

Please wait for a while. It would be ready soon.

B: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

(二)

A: 鱼的味道怎么样?

Yú de wèidào zěnmeyàng?

How is the taste of the fish.

B: 又甜又酸，味道很好。

Yòu tián yòu suān, wèidào hěn hǎo.

It is sweet and sour it tastes very good.

A: 汤的味道好不好?

Tāng de wèidào hǎo bù hǎo?

Is the taste of the soup good?

B: 汤有点儿咸了。

Tāng yǒudiǎnr xián le.

The soup is slightly salty.

A: 真对不起，请原谅。

Zhēn duìbuqǐ, qǐng yuánliàng.

I am really sorry, please forgive me.

B: 没什么!

Méi shénme.

It is nothing at all!

A: 欢迎您下次再来!

Huānyíng nín xià cì zài lái!

Hoping you would come again!

### (三) 四川饭店      Si chuan Hotel

我喜欢吃辣的，经常去四川饭店吃饭。四川饭店的菜都辣极了，特别是辣子鸡丁和麻辣豆腐，是两个有名的辣菜，它们又辣又香，味道好极了。还有那儿的鱼，也是辣

的，味道也不错。

四川饭店的客人比较多，经常没有坐位，需要等一会，那儿的菜也比别的饭店贵。可是，我还是喜欢去那儿。我喜欢一边喝酒，一边吃菜，一边听音乐，真是舒服极了。

I like to eat spicy food, often go to the Sichuan Hotel for meals. The dishes at sichuan Hotel are extremely spicy, particularly diced chicken with chilli and spicy beancurd. These are the two well-known dishes. They are spicy and fragrent, and extremely tasty. The fish is spicy too, its taste is not too bad.

Sichuan Hotel has got a relative number of customers. It is often full and it takes while to have vacant seats.

The dishes are more expensive as compared with other hotels. However, I still like going there. I like to drink, try out dishes and listen to music at the same time. It is extremely comfortable.

## 注释： Annotation

1. “这里”，“这里”和“这儿”的意思完全相同。同样“那儿”也可以说成“那里”。

“这里”，这里 and “这儿” have the same meaning. similarly. “那儿” can be said as “那里” too.

2. “不能吃辣的”，“辣的”是指“辣的菜”，其他如“酸的”、“甜的”、“咸的”。

“不能吃辣的”，“辣的” means spicy dish, other like “酸的” “sour” “甜的” “sweet”，“咸的” “salty”.

3. “马上就好”，“马上”和“就”经常在一起用，强调情况就要发



生。

“马上就好,”“马上” and “就” are often used together, emphasize something is going to take place soon.

马上就要下雨了    going to rain immediately

马上就走            going to go immediately

马上就来            going to come immediately

4. “有点儿咸了”, “有点儿+形容词”表示程度轻(有点儿累、有点儿忙), “有点儿+形容词+了”, 表示不满意, 这里的形容词前还可以加上“太”。

“有点儿咸了” “有点儿 plus adjective express the degree or level is moderate (有点儿累——slightly tired, 有点儿忙——slightly busy), “有点儿+adjective+了”, express dissatisfaction, “太” can be added before adjectives.

如: 有点儿甜了    Like: slightly sweet

有点儿太贵了        slightly expensive

有点儿太客气了     slightly courteous

#### IV. 练习:        Exercise

1. 选词填空:        Fill in the following blanks

这    那    这儿(这里)    那儿(那里)    哪    哪儿

- (1) 你去过四川饭店吗? (            ) 的菜味道怎么样?
- (2) 我们在 (            ) 吃吧, (            ) 的菜不错。
- (3) 我不喜欢 (            ) 本书, 我喜欢 (            ) 本。
- (4) 你喜欢上海吗? (            ) 的天气怎么样?
- (5) 给你, (            ) 是你的钥匙。

- (6) 你是在 (            ) 出生的?  
(7) 你的朋友是 (            ) 国人?

2. 用“有点儿……了”把下列词造成句子:

Use “有点儿…了” to join the following words as complete sentences

- |          |   |
|----------|---|
| (1) 这件衣服 | 贵 |
| (2) 那碗汤  | 咸 |
| (3) 豆腐   | 辣 |
| (4) 糖醋鱼  | 甜 |
| (5) 这个菜  | 酸 |
| (6) 那条裙子 | 短 |

3. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

- (1) A: 您要点什么?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
A: 喝点什么?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。  
A: 还要别的吗?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_。
- (2) A: \_\_\_\_\_。  
B: 我咳嗽了, 不能吃辣的。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_。  
B: 好, 我最喜欢吃豆腐。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_。  
B: 谢谢, 我也不能喝酒。

#### IV. 生词:          New Words

- |     |      |            |     |                           |
|-----|------|------------|-----|---------------------------|
| 1.  | 菜单   | càidān     | (名) | menu                      |
| 2.  | 这里   | zhèlǐ      | (名) | here                      |
| 3.  | 菜    | cài        | (名) | dish                      |
| 4.  | 味道   | wèidào     | (名) | taste                     |
| 5.  | 鱼    | yú         | (名) | fish                      |
| 6.  | 素菜   | sùcài      | (名) | vegetarian dish           |
| 7.  | 辣    | là         | (形) | hot                       |
| 8.  | 碗    | wǎn        | (名) | bowl                      |
| 9.  | 米饭   | mǐfàn      | (名) | rice                      |
| 10. | 鸡蛋   | jīdàn      | (名) | egg                       |
| 11. | 汤    | tāng       | (名) | soup                      |
| 12. | 咸    | xián       | (形) | salty                     |
| 13. | 马上   | mǎshàng    | (副) | immediately               |
| 14. | 座位   | zuòwèi     | (名) | seat                      |
| 15. | 豆腐   | dòufu      | (名) | beancurd                  |
| 16. | 橘子水  | júzhǐshuǐ  | (名) | tangerine juice           |
| 17. | 酸    | suān       | (形) | sour                      |
| 18. | 四川   | Sìchuān    |     | Sichuan                   |
| 19. | 辣子鸡丁 | Làzǐjīdīng |     | diced chicken with chilli |
| 20. | 麻辣豆腐 | Málàdòufu  |     | spicy beancurd            |
| 21. | 糖醋鱼  | Tángcùyú   |     | sweet-sour fish           |

## 27. 减肥 Dieting

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

261. 她最近越来越胖。

Tā zuìjìn yuèláiyuè pàng.

She is getting fatter recently.

262. 太胖了对身体没有好处。

Tài pàng le duì shēntǐ méiyǒu hǎochu.

It is not advantageous to the healthy for being too fat.

263. 有什么办法可以减肥吗?

Yǒu shénme bànfǎ kěyǐ jiǎnféi ma?

Is there any way which can be used to reduce my weight?

264. 他天天跑步。

Tā tiāntiān pǎo bù.

He jogs everyday.

265. 他还是这么胖。

Tā háishi zhème pàng.

He is still so fat.

266. 你应该少吃甜的东西。

Nǐ yīnggāi shǎo chī tián de dōngxi.

You should take less sweet foods.

267. 你可以试试喝减肥茶。

Nǐ kěyǐ shìshì hē jiǎnféi chá.

You should try drinking the dieting tea.

268. 她决定减肥。

Tā jué dìng jiǎnféi.

She decides to go on a diet.

269. 她正在做减肥体操呢!

Tā zhèngzài zuò jiǎnféi tǐcāo ne!

She is doing the exercise which can help to reduce her weight.

270. 一点儿作用也没有。

Yìdiǎnr zuòyòng yě méiyǒu.

It has got no effects at all.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 你最近有点儿胖了。

Nǐ zuìjìn yǒudiǎnr pàng le.

You are slightly fat recently.

B: 是, 我越来越胖。

Shì, wǒ yuèláiyuè pàng.

Yes, I am getting fatter.

A: 太胖了对身体没有好处。

Tài pàng le duì shēntǐ méi yǒu hǎochu.

It is not advantageous to the health for being too fat.

B: 有什么办法可以减肥吗?

Yǒu shénme bànfǎ kěyǐ jiǎnféi ma?

Is there any ways which can be used to reduce my weight?

A: 你应该每天锻炼身体。

Nǐ yīnggāi měi tiān duànliàn shēntǐ.

You should train your body everyday.

B: 我天天跑步，还是这么胖。

Wǒ tiāntiān pǎo bù, háishi zhème pàng.

I jogs every day, however, I am still as fat as before.

A: 你喜欢吃甜的东西吧?

Nǐ xǐhuan chī tián de dōngxi ba?

Do you like to take sweet foods?

B: 我喜欢吃糖。

Wǒ xǐhuan chī táng.

I like to take sweets.

A: 你要少吃糖。

Nǐ yào shǎo chī táng.

You should eat less sweets

B: 是不是还要少吃饭?

Shì bu shì hái yào shǎo chī fàn?

Do I still need to take less rice?

A: 少吃饭对身体也不好。

Shǎo chī fàn duì shēntǐ yě bù hǎo.

Eating less rice is not beneficial to the health too.

B: 还有别的办法减肥吗?

Hái yǒu biéde bànfǎ jiǎnféi ma?

Is there any other ways to reduce my weight?

A: 你可以试试喝减肥茶。

Nǐ kěyǐ shìshi hē jiǎnféi chá.

You can try drinking dieting tea.

B: 好，我试试。

Hǎo, wǒ shìshi.

All right. I would try.

(二)

(两个朋友在看她做体操)

(Two friends watching her doing exercise)

A: 她在干什么?

Tā zài gàn shénme?

What is she doing?

B: 她正在做减肥体操呢!

Tā zhèngzài zuò jiǎnféi tǐcāo ne!

She is doing exercise to reduce her weight.

A: 她打算减肥吗?

Tā dǎsuàn jiǎnféi ma?

Is she planing to go on a diet?

B: 是，她最近越来越胖。

Shì, tā zuìjìn yuèláiyuè pàng.

Yes, she is getting fatter recently.

A: 做体操有用吗?

Zuò tǐcāo yǒu yòng ma?

Is the doing of exercise effective?

B: 一点儿作用也没有, 她还是那么胖。

Yīdiǎnr zuòyòng yě méiyǒu, tā háishi nàme pàng.

It has got no effects at all. She is still as fat as before.

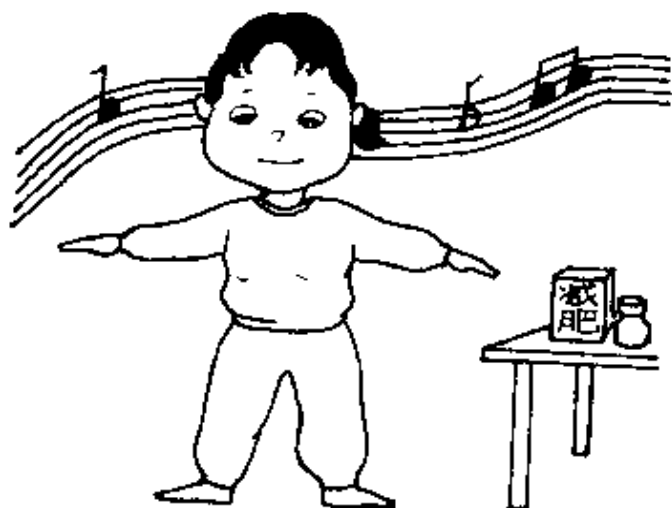
A: 胖也很好看, 不一定要减肥。

Pàng yě hěn hǎokàn, bù yīdìng yào jiǎnféi.

Being fat can be nice looking too. It is unnecessary to go on a diet.

### (三) 减 肥 Dieting

小马最近越来越胖, 她决定减肥, 同学们告诉她很多减肥的办法。第一, 锻炼身体, 做减肥体操。第二, 少吃饭, 少吃甜的东西。第三, 喝减肥茶。第四, 吃减肥药。





各种办法小马都试过了。她天天跑步，天天做体操。她每天只吃两顿饭，也不吃糖。她买了减肥茶，也买了减肥药，每天喝，每天吃，可是一点儿作用也没有，她没有瘦，还是那么胖。

Xiao Ma is getting fatter recently. She decides to go on a diet. Her classmates give her a lot of advices on dieting: Firstly take less rice and sweet foods. secondly, eat less rice, eat less sweet food. Thirdly, drink dieting tea. Fourthly, take dieting medicine.

Xiao Ma has tried all the ways. She jogs everyday. does exercises daily. She even takes two meals a day and does not take sweets. She drinks dieting tea and take dieting medicine daily after buying them. However, there is no effect at all. She's still as fat and her weight is not reduced.

### 注释:      Annotation

1. “越来越胖”，“越来越……”表示程度随着时间的推移而提高，后可加“了”。

“越来越胖”，“越来越……” expresses the degree or level increases as time goes by, “了” can be added after it.

越来越瘦      getting thinner

越来越好      getting better

越来越冷了      getting colder

2. “天天跑步”，“天天”是“天”的重叠式，意思是“每天”。

“天天跑步”，“天天” is the reduplicated form of “天”，it means everyday.

天天吃药            take medicine everyday

年年去中国        go to China every year

人人喜欢漂亮    everybody likes to be pretty

3. “这么胖”，指示代词“这么”表示程度高，也可以说成“那么”。

“这么胖” demonstrative pronoun “这么” indicates the degree or level is high. It can be said as “那么” too.

天气这么好        the weather is so good

汤这么咸            the soup is so salty

公园里那么多人    there are so many people in the park.

4. “正在……呢”，这个格式也用来表示动作正在进行，状态正在持续。也说“在……呢”。

“正在…呢”，this form is used to indicate that the movement is in the process of carrying out, the condition is continualng. can be said “在……呢”。

他正在喝水呢        He is drinking.

我正在打电话呢    I am making a call.

小王在做体操呢    Xiao Wang is doing exercise.

5. “没有瘦”，副词“没有”可以用在形容词前，肯定式是“瘦了”。

“没有瘦”，adverb “没有” can be used before adjective, the affirmative form is “瘦了”。

### Ⅲ、练习： Exercise

#### 1. 用“越来越……”完成下列句子：

Use “越来越…” to complete the following sentences

- (1) 最近工作 ( ) 了。
- (2) 商店里的东西 ( ) 了。
- (3) 春天到了，天气 ( ) 了。
- (4) 风 ( ) 了。
- (5) 他学习 ( )。
- (6) 最近他身体一直不好，( )。

#### 2. 翻译并造句： Translate and make a sentences

- (1) 不胖也不瘦
- (2) 不冷也不热
- (3) 不高也不低
- (4) 不大也不小
- (5) 不长也不短
- (6) 不咸也不淡

#### 3. 选择合适的词组连成句子： Choose the suitable phrases to join as complete sentences

- |       |     |
|-------|-----|
| A     | B   |
| 医院里的人 | 那么好 |
| 这本书   | 这么辣 |
| 今天的天气 | 那么多 |

买火车票  
这碗汤

这么没意思  
那么麻烦

V. 生词:      New Words

- |     |     |            |     |                     |
|-----|-----|------------|-----|---------------------|
| 1.  | 越   | yuè        | (副) | get over            |
|     | 越来越 | yuèlái yuè |     | get...and...        |
| 2.  | 胖   | pàng       | (形) | fat                 |
| 3.  | 减肥  | jiǎnféi    | (动) | reduce              |
| 4.  | 跑步  | pǎo bù     |     | jogging             |
| 5.  | 这么  | zhème      | (代) | such so             |
| 6.  | 少   | shǎo       | (量) | little              |
| 7.  | 决定  | juéding    | (动) | decide              |
| 8.  | 体操  | tǐcāo      | (名) | exercise            |
| 9.  | 作用  | zuòyòng    | (名) | effect              |
| 10. | 顿   | dùn        | (量) | <i>measure word</i> |
| 11. | 没有  | méiyǒu     | (副) | not                 |
| 12. | 瘦   | shòu       | (形) | thin                |
| 13. | 那么  | nàme       | (代) | of that kind; such  |

## 28. 爱好体育 Go in for sports

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

271. 他正在操场上打网球呢!

Tā zhèngzài cāochang shang dǎ wǎngqiú ne!  
He is playing tennis at the field.

272. 打网球是他最喜欢的体育活动。

Dǎ wǎngqiú shì tā zuì xǐhuan de tǐyù huódòng.  
Tennis is his favorite sport activity.

273. 他是一个体育爱好者。

Tā shì yí ge tǐyù àihào zhě.  
He is a sport activist.

274. 跑步、游泳、滑冰，他样样都行。

Pǎo bù, yóuyǒng, huá bīng, tā yàngyàng dōu xíng.  
He is good at every thing : jogging, swimming, skiing.

275. 他从来不得病。

Tā cónglái bù dé bìng.  
He is never sick.

276. 我从来没打过棒球。

Wǒ cónglái méi dǎ guo bàngqiú.  
I have never played baseball.

277. 他一年四季都锻炼身体。

Tā yì nián sì jì dōu duànliàn shēntǐ.

He trains his body throughout the four seasons.

278. 我要去打太极拳了。

Wǒ yào qù dǎ tàijíquán le.

I want to go and practise Taiji.

279. 无论刮风天还是下雨天，他都不停止。

Wúlùn guā fēng tiān háishi xià yǔ tiān, tā dōu bù tíngzhǐ.

He never stops whether it is a windy day or raining day.

280. 他五十多岁了，身体比年轻人还好。

Tā wǔshí duō suì le, shēntǐ bǐ niánqīng rén hái hǎo.

He is already more than fifty years old, his health is better than young people.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(两个朋友在谈话 Two friends are chatting)

A: 小王在哪儿?

Xiǎo Wáng zài nǎr?

Where is Xiao Wang?

B: 他正在操场上打网球呢!

Tā zhèngzài cāochǎng shàng dǎ wǎngqiú ne!

He is playing tennis at the field.

A: 他那么喜欢打网球?

Tā nàme xǐhuan dǎ wǎngqiú?

Does he like tennis so much?

B: 他喜欢活动, 天天下午都打一会儿网球。

Tā xǐhuan huódòng, tiāntiān xiàwǔ dōu dǎ yíhuìr wǎngqiú.

He likes to be active. plays tennis for a while every afternoon.

A: 除了打网球, 他还喜欢别的体育活动吗?

Chúle dǎ wǎngqiú, tā hái xǐhuan biéde tǐyù huódòng ma?

Besides tennis, what other sports activities does he like?

B: 跑步、游泳、滑冰, 他样样都行。

Pǎo bù, yóuyǒng, huá bīng, tā yàngyàng dōu xíng.

He is good at everything: jogging, swimming and skiing.

A: 他一年四个季节都锻炼身体。

Tā yī nián sì ge jìjié dōu duànliàn shēntǐ.

He trains his body throughout the four seasons.

B: 他是一个体育爱好者。

Tā shì yí ge tǐyù àihào zhě.

He is a sports activist.

A: 那他的身体一定很健康。

Nà tā de shēntǐ yí dìng hěn jiànkāng.

His health must be very good then.

B: 是, 他从来不得病。

Shì, tā cóng lái bù dé bìng.

Yes, he is never sick.

(二)

A: 你经常锻炼身体吗?

Nǐ jīngcháng duànliàn shēntǐ ma?

Do you train your body often?

B: 是, 我经常做体育活动。

Shì, wǒ jīngcháng zuò tǐyù huódòng.

Yes, I often do sports activities.

A: 你最喜欢的活动是什么?

Nǐ zuì xǐhuan de huódòng shì shénme?

What is the activity that you like best?

B: 打棒球。

Dǎ bàngqiú.

Baseball.

A: 我从来没打过棒球, 有意思吗?

Wǒ cónglái méi dǎguo bàngqiú, yǒu yìsī ma?

I have never played baseball, is it interesting?

B: 有意思极了, 你跟我一起去看吧!

Yǒu yìsī jí le, nǐ gēn wǒ yìqǐ qù kànkān ba!

It is extremely interesting, you can come along with me to take a look!

A: 现在不行, 我还有事。

Xiànzài bù xíng, wǒ hái yǒu shì.

I cannot make it now, I have got something on.

B: 也去锻炼身体吗?



Yě qù duànliàn shēntǐ ma?

Are you going to train your body too?

A: 是，我要去打太极拳。

Shì, wǒ yào qù dǎ tàijíquán.

Yes, I am going to practise Taiji.

B: 你这么年轻也喜欢打太极拳吗?

Nǐ zhème niánqīng yě xǐhuan dǎ tàijíquán ma?

You like to practise Taiji at such a young age?

A: 我已经四十多岁了，不年轻了。

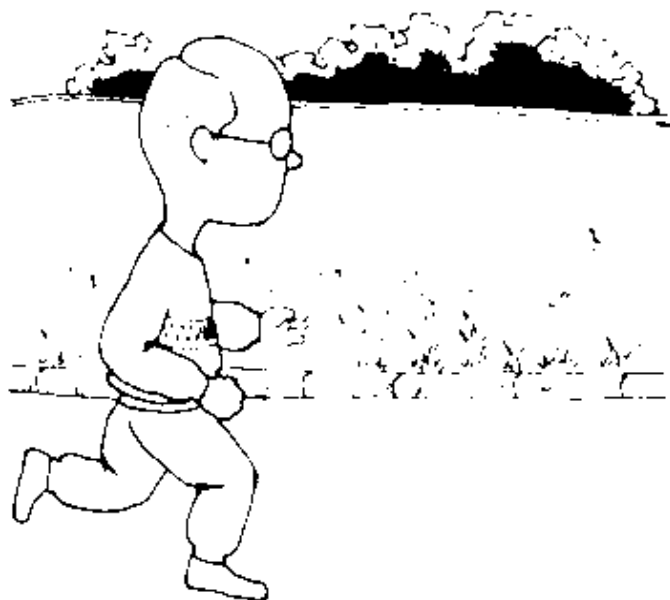
Wǒ yǐjīng sìshí duō suì le, bù niánqīng le.

I am already more than forty years old. I am no longer young.

### (三) 体育活动 Sport Activities

李老师非常喜欢体育活动，他是一个体育爱好者。打网球，打棒球，跑步，滑冰，游泳……，他样样都行。每天早上你可以看见他在校园里跑步，每天下午你又看见他在操场上打球。一年四季，无论刮风天还是下雨天，他都不停止。因为李老师天天锻炼，保持了身体健康。他很少感冒，很少去医院，从来没得过大病，也从来不吃药。他已经五十多岁了，身体比年轻人还好。

Mr. Li likes sports activities very much. He is a sports activist. He is good at all things, tennis, baseball, jogging, skiing, swimming ... Every morning you can see him jogging in the school yard. You can see him playing ball games at the field every afternoon. Throughout the four seasons, whether it is a windy day or raining



day, he never stops. Mr. Li maintains his health because he trains everyday. He does not get flu easily, does not have to go to hospital. He is never ill and does not take medicine. He is already more than fifties, his health is much better than young people.

### Ⅲ. 注释:           Annotation

1. “样样都行”，“样”是量词，重叠形式“样样”是“每一样”的意思。后面要用“都”。

如：“样样都行”，“样”is a measure word. The reduplicated form “样样” means ‘每一样’， “都” is needed after it.

样样都会       knows everything

样样都吃      eats everything

2. “从来”，“从来”用在否定句中，否定动作、行为的发生。“从来”后可以用“不”，也可以用“没（有）”。用“没”的时候，动词后要有“过”。

“从来”， “从来” is used in negative sentences, negate the happening of movements or behaviour, “从来” can have “不” after it , can used “没（有） too.” when used “没”，“过” must follow the verb.

如：

a. 从来 + 不 + 动词 + 宾语      从来不吃药

b. 从来 + 没有 + 动词 + 过 + 宾语      从来没有吃过药

Like: 从来 + 不 + 动词 + object      never take medicine

从来 + 没有 + verb + 过 + object      have never taken medicine

3. “没打过”，“没”是副词“没有”的省略。

“没打过”，“没” is an adverb, is the simplified form of “没有”。

4. “一年四季”，即一年四个季节。

“一年四季”， means the four seasons of a year.

5. “无论……还是……，都……”，这个格式表示在任何条件、情况下，结果都不会变。“无论”和“还是”的后面可以是名词，也可以是动词。

“无论…还是…，都…” this form indicates that the consequences would not change under any conditions or circumstances.

“无论” and “还是” can have nouns and verbs after it.

无论你还是我，都不知道这件事。

无论去还是不去，都行。

Like: Both of us do not know this matter, whether it is you or

me.

It is all right whether to go or not to go.

6. “五十多岁”，数词“多”加在数后，表示概数。

“五十多岁”，numeral “多” is added after number to indicate an approximate number.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

##### 1. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

(1) 他从来不听音乐。

小王	锻炼身体
王红	吃辣的
我	喝咖啡
她	穿裙子

(2) 我从来没去过医院?

我	打	网球
老五	吃	西餐
小王	学	英语
他	喝	酒

##### 2. 翻译: Translate

(1) 滑冰、游泳，他样样都喜欢。

(2) 无论英语还是法语，他都不会。

(3) 无论喜欢还是不喜欢，你都应该锻炼身体。

(4) 无论刮风还是下雨，他天天都跑步。

(5) 他一年四季不停止锻炼身体。

(6) 他一年四季工作都很忙。

### 3. 用否定式回答问题：

Use the negative forms to answer the following questions

(1) 你去医院了吗？

(2) 你洗衣服了吗？

(3) 学校放假了吗？

(4) 他参观美术馆了吗？

## V. 生词： New Words

1. 操场	cāochǎng	(名)	field
2. 打	dǎ	(动)	play
3. 网球	wǎngqiú	(名)	tennis
4. 体育	tǐyù	(名)	sports
5. 活动	huódòng	(名)	activity
6. 爱好者	àihào zhě	(名)	activist
7. 游泳	yóuyǒng	(动)	swimming
8. 滑冰	huá bīng		skiing
9. 样样	yàngyàng	(名)	every
10. 从来	cónglái	(副)	always
11. 得	dé	(动)	get

12.	棒球	bàngqiú	(名)	baseball
13.	太极拳	tàijíquán	(名)	Taiji
14.	无论	wúlùn	(连)	no matter what
	无论……还是……	wúlùn…háishi…		
15.	停止	tíngzhǐ	(动)	stop
16.	多	duō	(形)	more
17.	年轻	niánqīng	(形)	young
18.	极	jí	(副)	extremely

## 29. 合作 Cooperation

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

281. 昨天晚上我休息得很好。

Zuótiān wǎnshàng wǒ xiūxi de hěn hǎo.

I have rested very well last night.

282. 讨论两家公司的合作问题。

Tǎolùn liǎng jiā gōngsī de hézuò wèntí.

Discuss the two companies.

283. 请介绍一下儿贵公司的产品。

Qǐng jièshào yíxiàr guì gōngsī de chǎnpǐn.

Please introduce the products of your company.

284. 能看看说明书吗?

Néng kànkàn shuōmíngshū ma?

Can I have a look at the instruction manual.

285. 质量已经达到了国际先进水平。

Zhìliàng yǐjīng dá dào le guójì xiānjìn shuǐpíng.

Quality has already reached the international advanced level.

286. 先看样品，然后再讨论。

Xiān kàn yàngpǐn, rán hòu zài tǎolùn.

First look at the sample, then discuss it.

287. 我不能马上决定。  
Wǒ bù néng mǎshàng juéding.  
I cannot decide immediately.
288. 价格很合适。  
Jiàgé hěn héshì.  
Prices are very suitable.
289. 出口水果、啤酒。  
Chūkǒu shuǐguǒ, píjiǔ.  
Export fruits, beer.
290. 进口电视和冰箱。  
Jìnkǒu diànshì hé bīngxiāng.  
Import television and refrigerator.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

- A: 您好! 马丁先生!  
Nín hǎo! Mǎdīng xiānsheng.  
Hello, Mr. Marting!
- B: 你好, 王先生!  
Ní hǎo, Wáng xiānsheng!  
Hello Mr. Wang!
- A: 昨天晚上休息得好吗?  
Zuótiān wǎnshàng xiūxi de hǎo ma?  
Have got rested well last night?



B: 休息得很好, 谢谢!

Xiūxi de hěn hǎo, xièxie!

I have rested very well Thank you!

A: 餐厅的饭菜, 味道怎么样?

Cāntīng de fàn cài, wèidào zěnmeyàng?

How is the food at the restaurant?

B: 也很好, 中餐、西餐都有, 我很满意。

Yě hěn hǎo, zhōngcān, xīcān dōu yǒu, wǒ hěn mǎnyì.

It is very good too, they have got both Chinese and western food, I am very satisfied.

A: 我们今天上午讨论两家公司的合作问题, 可以吗?

Wǒmen jīntiān shàngwǔ tāolùn liǎng jiā gōngsī de hézuò wèntí, kěyǐ ma?

Is it all right for us to discuss the issue of cooperation between our companies this morning?

B: 可以, 在哪儿讨论?

Kěyǐ, zài nǎr tāolùn?

Sure. Where do we discuss?

A: 在二楼。

Zài èr lóu.

At the second level.

B: 几点钟开始?

Jǐ diǎnzhōng kāishǐ?

When is it going to start?

A: 九点半。

Jiǔ diǎn bàn.

At half past nine.

(二)

A: 请介绍一下贵公司的产品。

Qǐng jièshào yíxià guì gōngsī de chǎnpǐn.

Please introduce the products of your company.

B: 我们生产冰箱。

Wǒmen shēngchǎn bīngxiāng.

We manufacture refrigerators.

A: 能看看产品说明书吗?

Néng kànkàn chǎnpǐn shuōmíngshū ma?

Can I take a look at the instruction manual for the products?

B: 可以, 请看。

Kěyǐ, qǐng kàn.

Sure. Please do so.

A: 产品质量怎么样?

Chǎnpǐn zhìliàng zěnmeyàng?

How is the quality of the products?

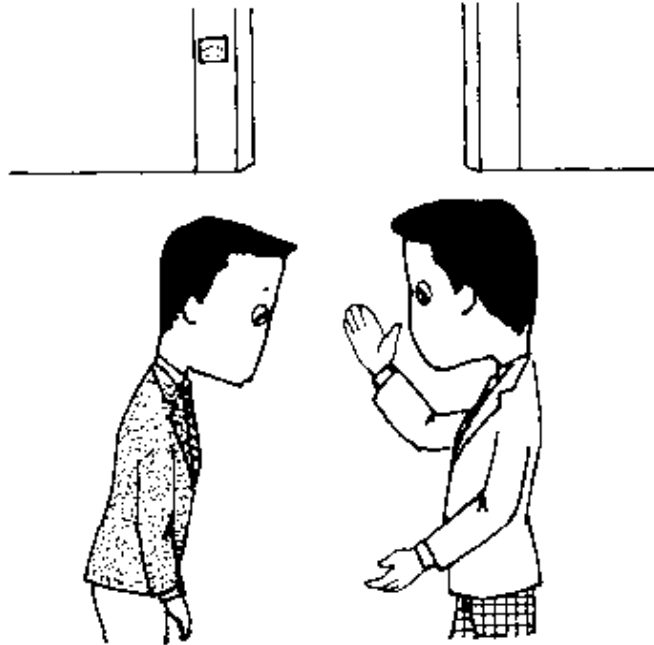
B: 产品质量很好, 已经达到了国际先进水平。

Chǎnpǐn zhìliàng hěn hǎo, yǐjīng dá dào le guójì xiānjìn shuǐpíng.

The quality of the products is very good, it has reached the international advanced level.

A: 我们很需要冰箱, 不过我不能马上决定。

Wǒmen hěn xūyào bīngxiāng, búguò wǒ bù néng mǎshàng



juéding.

We need refrigerators badly, however, I cannot decide immediately.

B: 您是不是需要看看样品。

Nín shì bu shì xūyào kànkàn yàngpǐn.

Do you need to take a look at the sample?

A: 是，我需要看样品。

Shì, wǒ xūyào kàn yàngpǐn.

Yes, I need to take a look at the sample.

B: 希望您能满意。

Xīwàng nín néng mǎnyì.

Hope that you would be satisfied.

A: 我先看样品, 然后我们再讨论。

Wǒ xiān kàn yàngpǐn, ránhòu wǒmen zài tāolùn.

I would look at the sample first, we would discuss later.

B: 好, 请跟我走。

Hǎo, qǐng gēn wǒ zǒu.

All right. Please follow me.

### (三) 合 作      Cooperation

一九九六年十月十六日上午九点半, 日本 A 公司的平田先生和中国 B 公司的王先生讨论了两家公司的合作问题。

A 公司希望出口冰箱和电视, 进口水果和啤酒。B 公司希望出口水果和啤酒, 进口日本生产和冰箱和电视。两个公司以前也合作过, 产品的质量都很好, 价格也很合适, 他们一直合作得非常愉快。

Mr. Hirata from A company of Japan and Mr. Wang from B company of China discussed the issue of cooperation between their companies at 9: 30 a. m. on 16th, October, 1996.

A company wish to export refrigerators and television, import fruits and beer. B company wish to export fruits and beer, import Japan-made refrigerators and television. Two companies have worked together. The quality of the products are very good, the price are suitable too. They have been working together happily.

## 注释: Annotation

1. “两家公司”，“家”在这里作量词用。

“两家公司”，“家” is used as a measure word here.

2. “介绍一下儿”，动词后加“一下儿”表示一种轻松的语气，或表示动作经历的时间短，有时也说“一下”。

“介绍一下儿”“一下儿” is added after verbs to indicate a relaxed tone, or to indicate the duration of the experience of verbs are short. Sometimes can be said as ‘一下’。

讨论一下儿      Like: discuss a while

看一下儿              look a while

等一下儿              wait a while

3. “贵公司”，“贵”除了用于问人的姓名外（贵姓），也用在“国家、公司、（学）校”等名词前，表示尊敬。

“贵公司”，“贵” besides used to ask for other's names (贵姓), can be used before nouns like: 国 “country”, 公司 “company” to express respect.

贵国      Like: your country

贵公司      your company

贵校      your school

## IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 完成对话: complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 贵公司生产什么产品?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 质量怎么样？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 能先看看样品吗？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 这是你们的产品吗？

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我想看一下儿说明书。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 我很希望跟你们合作。

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 选择合适的词连成词组:      Choose the suitable words to join  
as phrases

A	B
介绍	合作问题
讨论	冰箱
看看	大米
进口	说明书
出口	产品质量
生产	电视

3. 翻译:      Translate

(1) 我以前来过中国。

(2) 以前我住在上海，现在住在北京。

(3) 两家公司以前经常合作。

(4) 我以前喜欢吃辣的，最近经常咳嗽，不吃了。

(5) 我知道你以前天天锻炼身体。

V. 生词:        New Words

- |     |     |             |     |                              |
|-----|-----|-------------|-----|------------------------------|
| 1.  | 昨天  | zuótiān     | (名) | yesterday                    |
| 2.  | 讨论  | tǎolùn      | (动) | discuss                      |
| 3.  | 合作  | hézuò       | (动) | cooperate                    |
| 4.  | 问题  | wèntí       | (名) | question                     |
| 5.  | 介绍  | jièshào     | (动) | introduce                    |
| 6.  | 一下儿 | yíxià       |     | a while                      |
| 7.  | 产品  | chǎnpǐn     | (名) | products                     |
| 8.  | 说明书 | shuōmíngshū | (名) | instruction manual           |
| 9.  | 质量  | zhìliàng    | (名) | quality                      |
| 10. | 达到  | dá dào      | (动) | reach                        |
| 11. | 先进  | xiānjìn     | (形) | advanced                     |
| 12. | 水平  | shuǐpíng    | (名) | level                        |
| 13. | 样品  | yàngpǐn     | (名) | sample                       |
| 14. | 价格  | jiàgé       | (名) | price                        |
| 15. | 出口  | chūkǒu      | (动) | export                       |
| 16. | 进口  | jìnkǒu      | (动) | import                       |
| 17. | 生产  | shēngchǎn   | (动) | produce                      |
| 18. | 以前  | yǐqián      | (名) | previously                   |
| 19. | 平田  | Píngtián    |     | Hirata (surname of a person) |

## 30. 读中文报纸 Reading Chinese papers

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

291. 您是什么时候来中国的?

Nín shì shénme shíhòu lái Zhōngguó de?

When did you come to China?

292. 对, 我在北京大学学习中文。

Duì, wǒ zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Zhōngwén.

Yes, I am studying Chinese at Peking University.

293. 现在你的汉语水平怎么样?

Xiànzài nǐ de Hànyǔ shuǐpíng zěnmeyàng?

How is your Chinese standard at present?

294. 还看不懂中文报纸。

Hái kàn bu dǒng Zhōngwén bàozhǐ.

I cannot read Chinese paper as yet.

295. 你能看懂《人民日报》了, 太好了!

Nǐ néng kàn dǒng 《Rénmín Rìbào》 le, tài hǎo le!

You can read Renmin Ribao, it is really great!

296. 了解国际新闻和国内大事。

Liǎojiě guójì xīnwén hé guónèi dàshì.

To understand international news and domestic affairs.



297. 看到商品消息。

Kàn dào shāngpǐn xiāoxi.

Notice information on commercial goods.

298. 你学习真努力!

Nǐ xuéxí zhēn nǔlì!

You are really hard working!

299. 因为天天看报纸, 所以中文进步很快。

Yīnwèi tiāntiān kàn bàozhǐ, suǒyǐ Zhōngwén jìnbù hěn kuài.

Because of reading the paper daily, my Chinese improves very fast.

300. 我还能看电视呢!

Wǒ hái néng kàn diànshì ne!

I can watch the television as well!

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 你是什么时候来中国的?

Nǐ shì shénme shíhòu lái Zhōngguó de?

When did you come to China?

B: 我是去年9月来中国的。

Wǒ shì qùnián jiǔyuè lái Zhōngguó de.

I came to China last September.

A: 你在中国学习汉语吗?

Nǐ zài Zhōngguó xuéxí Hànyǔ ma?

Are you learning Chinese in China?

B: 对, 我在北京大学学习汉语。

Duì, wǒ zài Běijīng Dàxué xuéxí Hànyǔ.

Yes, I am learning Chinese at Peking University.

A: 你为什么学习汉语?

Nǐ wèi shénme yào xuéxí Hànyǔ?

Why do you want to learn Chinese?

B: 因为我喜欢中国历史, 我希望看懂中文书。

Yīnwèi wǒ xǐhuan Zhōngguó lìshǐ, wǒ xīwàng kàn dǒng Zhōngwén shū.

Because I like Chinese history, I wish to be able to read Chinese books.

A: 现在你的汉语水平怎么样?

Xiànzài nǐ de Hànyǔ shuǐpíng zěnmeyàng?

How is your Chinese standard at present?

B: 还不太好, 还不能看中文报纸。

Hái bú tài hǎo, hái bù néng kàn Zhōngwén bàozhǐ.

It is not too good, I cannot read Chinese paper as yet.

A: 读报是学习汉语的好办法, 你应该开始看报纸。

Dú bào shì xuéxí Hànyǔ de hǎo bànfǎ, nǐ yīnggāi kāishǐ kàn bàozhǐ.

Reading papers is a good way to learn Chinese. you should start reading papers.

B: 我打算上读报课, 我们学校有这门课。

Wǒ dǎsuàn shàng dú bào kè, wǒmen xuéxiào yǒu zhè mén kè.

I plan to attend the newspaper reading class, our school has got

this class.

A: 那好极了!

Nà hǎo jí le!

That is great!

B: 我一定读得很慢。

Wǒ yí dìng dú de hěn màn.

I would definitely read very slowly.

A: 不要紧，每个人开始的时候都很慢。

Bú yào jǐn, měi gè rén kāi shǐ de shí hou dōu hěn màn.

That is all right. Every one reads slowly at the beginning.

(二)

A: 你在干什么?

Nǐ zài gàn shén me?

What are you doing?

B: 我正在看报纸呢!

Wǒ zhèng zài kàn bào zhǐ ne!

I am reading the newspapers!

A: 中文报还是英文报?

Zhōngwén bào hái shì Yīngwén bào?

Is it Chinese newspapers or English newspapers?

B: 中文报，是《人民日报》。

Zhōngwén bào, shì 《Rénmín Rìbào》.

Chinese newspapers, it is Renmin Ribao.

A: 你能看懂《人民日报》了，太好了!

Nǐ néng kàndǒng 《Rénmín Rìbào》 le, tài hǎo le!

You can read Renmin Ribao, it is really great!

B: 我一边查字典, 一边看报纸, 很慢。

Wǒ yībiān chá zìdiǎn, yībiān kàn bàozhǐ, hěn màn.

I check the dictionary and read the newspapers at the same time. It is very slow.

A: 你是什么时候开始看中文报纸的?

Nǐ shì shénme shíhòu kāishǐ kàn Zhōngwén bàozhǐ de?

When did you begin to read Chinese papers?

B: 是昨天开始的。

Shì zuótiān kāishǐ de.

I began yesterday.

A: 你学习真努力!

Nǐ xuéxí zhēn nǔlì!

You are really hardworking!

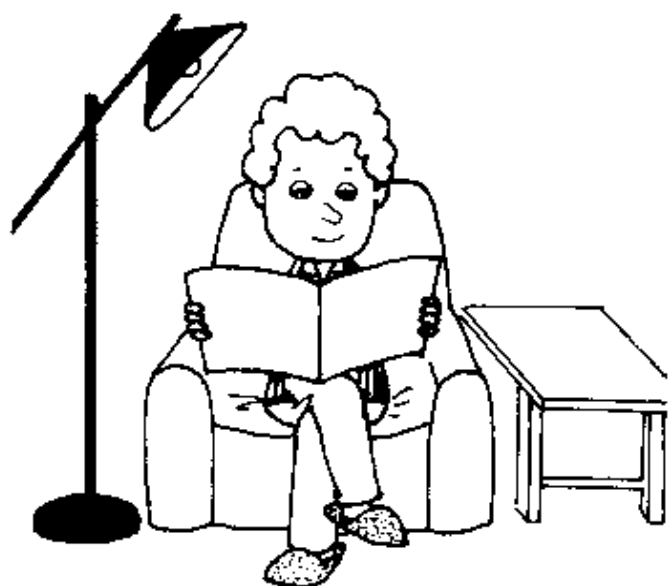
### (三) 读报的好处

#### The advantages of reading newspapers

看报纸有很多好处。看了报纸, 你可以了解国际新闻, 你可以知道国内大事, 你能看到旅游介绍, 你会知道商品的消息。你还可以了解哪儿有音乐会, 哪个饭店的饭菜味道最好, 怎样保持身体健康, 怎么样减肥, 明天会不会下雨……什么消息都有。

除了这些好处, 读报还有一个最大的好处——帮助我学习中文。因为我天天看报纸, 所以我的中文水平进步

很快。现在我已经可以看懂中文历史书了，我还能看电视呢！



Reading newspapers has got a lot of advantages. You can learn about international news, know domestic affairs, read about tour guide services, learn about information on commodities after reading newspapers. You can know about all kinds of information such as; where to go for concerts, which hotels have got the most delicious dish, how to maintain one's health, how to go on a diet, if it is going to rain tomorrow...etc.

Besides all these advantages, reading newspapers has got a greatest use—helps me in learning Chinese. My Chinese standard improves rapidly because I read newspaper daily, I am able to read

Chinese history books now. I can watch television too.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “是……的”, “是……的” 在可以用来强调时间, 被强调的时间放在“是……的”的中间。

“是…的”“是…的” can be used to emphasize time, the emphasized time is placed between “是…的”。

音乐会 是 下午三点的      The concert is held at 3:00 p. m.

去上海的火车 是 晚上七点五十分      The train to Shanghai is 7:50 p. m.

2. “看懂”、“看到”, 这是两个结果补语式, 动词“懂”和“到”分别出现在“看”后, 补充说明看的结果。

“看懂”“看到”, these two are in the resultant complement form, verbs “懂” and “到” appear separately after “看”, together explain the result of “看”。

3. “看得懂”, “看不懂” 在结果补语式的动词和补语之间加上“得”和“不”就构成可能补语式, 表示可能性。其他如: 听得懂/听不懂、学得会/学不会。

“看得懂”、“看不懂”, to add “得” and “不” between the verb and the complement of the insulant complement form. It would form the potential complement form to indicate potential. others like:

听得懂/听不懂

学得会/学不会

4. “因为……所以……” 表示原因和结果。

“因为…所以”, to indicate reasons and consequences.

因为病了，所以没去上课。

Because I am sick, that is why I do not go to class.

因为天气不好，所以停止锻炼。

Because the weather is not good, that is why we stop training.

5. “呢”，“呢”有三个作用：(1) 表示疑问：“你呢。”(2) 表示动作正在进行：“我正在看报呢。”(3) 表示确定的语气：“我还能看电视呢！”

呢，There are three meanings of “呢”

(1) It can express interrogative: 你呢

(2) It can express that the action is taking place: 我正在看报呢

(3) It can express a affirmative tone: 我还能看电视呢!

#### IV. 练习: Exercise

##### 1. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

看懂 听懂 看到 住满 卖完 打开

(1) 对不起，双人房间都（ ）了。

(2) 请（ ）书。

(3) 他（ ）弹钢琴了。

(4) 我说中文，你难（ ）吗？

(5) 你（ ）那个消息了吗？

(6) 我已经能（ ）中文书了！

(7) 对不起，那本书（ ）了。

##### 2. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

(1) 你买得到 火车票吗？

学得好	中文
打得好	网球
看得到	外边的风景

(2) 我看不懂《人民日报》?

弹不好	钢琴
买不到	那本字典
学不会	游泳

3. 回答问题: Answer the following questions

- (1) 你是什么时候出生的?
- (2) 音乐会是几点的?
- (3) 你是什么时候开始读《人民日报》的?
- (4) 他是什么时候去商店的?

V. 生词: New Words

- |        |          |     |             |
|--------|----------|-----|-------------|
| 1. 时候  | shíhòu   | (名) | time        |
| 2. 对   | duì      | (形) | correct     |
| 3. 大学  | dàxué    | (名) | university  |
| 4. 报纸  | bàozhǐ   | (名) | newspapers  |
| 5. 新闻  | xīnwén   | (名) | news        |
| 6. 国内  | guónèi   | (名) | national    |
| 7. 商品  | shāngpǐn | (名) | commercial  |
| 8. 消息  | xiāoxi   | (名) | information |
| 9. 所以  | suǒyǐ    | (连) | so          |
| 10. 进步 | jìnbù    | (动) | improve     |



- |     |      |               |     |                   |
|-----|------|---------------|-----|-------------------|
| 11. | 字典   | zìdiǎn        | (名) | dictionary        |
| 12. | 去年   | qùnián        | (名) | last year         |
| 13. | 历史   | lìshǐ         | (名) | history           |
| 14. | 查    | chá           | (动) | check             |
| 15. | 北京大学 | Běijīng Dàxué |     | Peking University |
| 16. | 人民日报 | Rénmín Rìbào  |     | Renmin Ribao      |

## 31. 他来做买卖 Doing business

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

301. 我是来中国做买卖的。

Wǒ shì lái Zhōngguó zuò mǎimai de.

I come to China for business dealing.

302. 我在一家电脑公司工作。

Wǒ zài yì jiā diànnǎo gōngsī gōngzuò.

I am working at a computer company.

303. 我们要向中国出口电脑。

Wǒmen yào xiàng Zhōngguó chūkǒu diànnǎo.

We want to export computers to China.

304. 我们和中国长城工业公司合作。

Wǒmen hé Zhōngguó Chángchéng Gōngyè Gōngsī hézuò.

We are cooperating with China Great-wall Industrial company.

305. 我是来参加农业商品交易会的。

Wǒ shì lái cānjiā nóngyè shāngpǐn jiāoyì huì de.

I come to participate in the agricultural trade fair.

306. 他是日本兄弟公司的经理。

Tā shì Rìběn Xiōngdì Gōngsī de jīnglǐ.

He is the manager of the Brother Company in Japan.

307. 祝您一切顺利!

Zhù nín yíqiè shùnlì!

Wishing you all the best!

308. 这家公司和中国有贸易关系。

Zhè jiā gōngsī hé Zhōngguó yǒu màooyì guānxi.

This company has got trade relation with China.

309. 他每年要来中国两次。

Tā měi nián yào lái Zhōngguó liǎng cì.

He comes to China twice per year.

310. 讨论以后的合作问题。

Tǎolùn yǐhòu de hézuò wèntí.

Discuss the issue of cooperation in the future.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(在饭店的咖啡厅, 两位客人一边聊天, 一边喝咖啡)

(At the hotel's cafe, two guests chatting and drinking coffee)

A: (中国人) 您好!

Nín hǎo!

(Chinese) Hello!

B: 您好!

Nín hǎo!

Hello!

A: 请问您是哪国人?

Qǐng wèn nín shì nǎ guó rén?

May I ask , what is your nationality?

B: 我是美国人。

Wǒ shì Měiguórén.

I am an American.

A: 您是来中国旅游的吗?

Nín shì lái Zhōngguó lǚyóu de ma?

Are you in China to travel around?

B: 不, 我是来中国做买卖的。

Bù, wǒ shì lái Zhōngguó zuò mǎimai de.

No , I am in China for business dealing.

A: 做什么买卖?

Zuò shénme mǎimai?

What kind of business do you deal with?

B: 我在美国一家电脑公司工作, 我们要向中国出口电脑。

Wǒ zài Měiguó yì jiā diànnǎo gōngsī gōngzuò, wǒmen yào xiàng Zhōngguó chūkǒu diànnǎo.

I work at a computer company in America, we want to export computers to China.

A: 你们也要进口一些商品吧?

Nǐmen yě yào jìnkǒu yìxiē shāngpǐn ba?

Do you have to import some commodities too?

B: 是, 我们打算进口钢材。

Shì, wǒmen dǎsuàn jìnkǒu gāngcái.

Yes, we plan to import steel products.

A: 您和中国的哪个公司合作?

Nín hé Zhōngguó de nǎ ge gōngsī hézuò?

Which company is cooperating with you in China?

B: 我们在和中国长城工业公司合作。

Wǒmen zài hé Zhōngguó Chángchéng Gōngyè Gōngsī hézuò.

We are in cooperation with China Greatwall Industrial Company.

A: 祝您一切顺利, 合作愉快!

Zhù nín yíqiè shùnlì, hézuò yúkuài!

Wishing you all the best and success in your cooperation.

B: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

(二)

A: 那个人是谁?

Nà ge rén shì shéi?

Who is that person?

B: 他是日本兄弟公司的经理。

Tā shì Rìběn Xiōngdì Gōngsī de jīnglǐ.

He is the manager of the Company of the Japanese Brothers.

A: 他是来中国做买卖的吧?

Tā shì lái Zhōngguó zuò mǎimai de ba?

Is he in China for business dealings?

B: 他是来参加商品交易会的。

Tā shì lái cānjiā shāngpǐn jiāoyì huì de.

He is here to participate in trade fair.

A: 什么商品交易会?

shénme shāngpǐn jiāoyì huì?

What kind of trade fair?

B: 农业商品交易会。

Nóngyè shāngpǐn jiāoyì huì.

Agricultural trade fair.

A: 那个交易会的商品都不错，商品质量很好。

Nà ge jiāoyì huì de shāngpǐn dōu búcuò, shāngpǐn zhìliàng hěn hǎo.

The commodities at the trade fair are not too bad, the quality is very good.

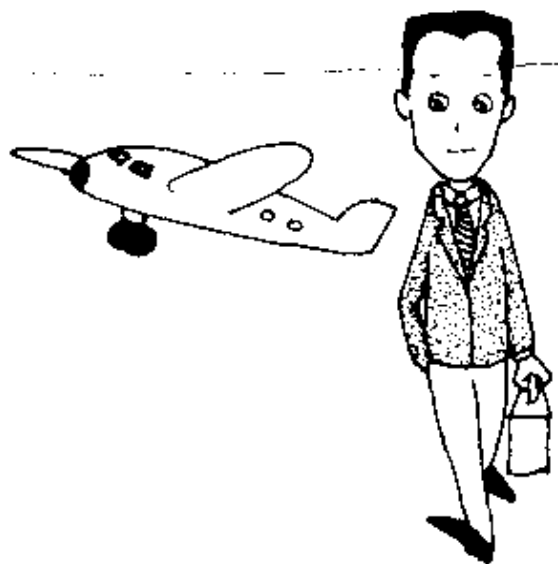
B: 希望他能满意。

Xīwàng tā néng mǎnyì.

Hope that he would be satisfied.

### (三) 平田先生很忙

平田先生是日本人，在日本的一家电器公司工作。因为这家日本的电器公司和中国有贸易关系，所以平田先生经常要到中国来，大约每年要来两次。春天的时候，他来中国参加商品交易会，送来说明书和样品——电视、冰箱，和中国讨论价格……决定出口问题。秋天的时候，他又要来中国，他要和中国讨论产品质量问题，讨论以后的合作问题。平田一年四季都很忙。



### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “是……的”, 这个格式可以用来强调目的, “是……的”中间至少有两个动词词组, 第一个动词词组往往是由动词“来”、“去”或由“来、去”组成的词组。如:

“是…的,” this form can be used to emphasize objective, there are at least two verbal phrases between “是…的”, the first verbal phrase is always formed by “来去” or phrase of “来、去”。

是来中国参加交易会的 is at China for trade fair

是去日本买家用电器的 go to Japan to buy family appliances.

2. “祝您一切顺利”，“祝+代词+其他”是常用的礼貌语言，其他如：

“祝您一切顺利”， “祝 + Pronoun + other” is often used as courteous greetings, others

祝你身体健康 Like: Wish you good health

祝你旅行愉快 Wish you on enjoyable journey

祝你学习进步 Wish you improvements in learning

3. “向”，是一个介词，引出动作的方向、对象。

“向”a preposition, it can be used to introduce the direction, object of an action.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: 你为什么来中国?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 参加什么商品交易会?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 那儿的商品怎么样?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 价格怎么样?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

(2) A: 你认识那位先生吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 他是哪国人?

B: \_\_\_\_\_



A: 他是来中国旅行的吗?

B: 不, \_\_\_\_\_

A: 他经常来中国吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

2. 选择正确的句子: Choose the correct sentences

(1) a. 我一家公司工作      b. 我在一家公司工作      c. 我工作  
在一家公司

(2) a. 向中国出口冰箱      b. 出口冰箱向中国      c. 出口向  
中国箱

(3) a. 他两次每年来中国      b. 他每年两次来中国      c. 他每  
年来中国两次

3. 翻译: translate

(1) 我打算以后学习弹钢琴。

(2) 现在我住在北京, 以后要住在上海。

(3) 应该讨论以后的合作问题。

(4) 我希望你以后经常来我家玩。

V. 生词: New Words

- |       |        |     |             |
|-------|--------|-----|-------------|
| 1. 买卖 | mǎimài | (名) | business    |
| 2. 向  | xiàng  | (介) | to          |
| 3. 工业 | gōngyè | (名) | industry    |
| 4. 参加 | cānjiā | (动) | join        |
| 5. 农业 | nóngyè | (名) | agriculture |

- |     |          |                                     |     |                     |
|-----|----------|-------------------------------------|-----|---------------------|
| 6.  | 交易会      | jiāoyì huì                          | (名) | trade fair          |
| 7.  | 经理       | jīnglǐ                              | (名) | manager             |
| 8.  | 祝        | zhù                                 | (动) | wish                |
| 9.  | 一切       | yíqiè                               | (名) | everything          |
| 10. | 顺利       | shùnlì                              | (形) | success             |
| 11. | 贸易       | màoyì                               | (名) | trade               |
| 12. | 关系       | guānxì                              | (名) | relationship        |
| 13. | 以后       | yǐhòu                               | (名) | in the future       |
| 14. | 钢材       | gāngcái                             | (名) | steel products      |
| 15. | 电器       | diànqì                              | (名) | electrical          |
| 16. | 中国长城工业公司 |                                     |     |                     |
|     |          | Zhōngguó Chángchéng Gōngyè Gōngsī   |     |                     |
|     |          | China Great-wall Industrial Company |     |                     |
| 17. | 兄弟公司     | Xōngdì Gōngsī                       |     | the Brother Company |

## 32. 我的专业 My speciality

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

311. 我打算毕业以后到贸易公司工作。

Wǒ dǎsuàn bìyè yǐhòu dào màoyì gōngsī gōngzuò.

I plan to work in a trading company after graduation.

312. 我要学习商业汉语和国际贸易两门课。

Wǒ yào xuéxí shāngyè Hànyǔ hé guójì màoyì liǎng mén kè.

I want to learn Chinese for commercial use and international trade.

313. 最近，中国的经济发展很快。

Zuìjìn, Zhōngguó de jīngjì fāzhǎn hěn kuài.

Recently the economy of China is developing at a very fast rate.

314. 你是从哪个学校毕业的？

Nǐ shì cóng nǎ ge xuéxiào bìyè de?

Where are you from before graduation?

315. 我的专业是国际贸易。

Wǒ de zhuānyè shì guójì màoyì.

I am specialized in international trade.

316. 我学习了怎么谈判、怎么定货、怎么签合同。  
Wǒ xuéxí le zěnmē tánpàn, zěnmē dìng huò, zěnmē qiān  
hétóng.  
I have learned how to negotiate, how to make trades of  
goods, how to sign contracts.
317. 我学习了两门外语。  
wǒ xuéxí le liǎng mén wàiyǔ.  
I have learned two foreign languages.
318. 在合资企业工作比较辛苦。  
Zài hézī qǐyè gōngzuò bǐjiào xīnkǔ.  
It is tougher to work at a joint venture enterprise.
319. 他正在努力学习，准备考试。  
Tā zhèngzài nǔlì xuéxí, zhǔnbèi kǎoshì.  
He is working hard, preparing his examination.
320. 这对他找工作很重要！  
Zhè duì tā zhǎo gōngzuò hěn zhòngyào!  
It is important for him to look for a job.

## II. 课文： Text

### (一)

- A: 学校快放假了吧?  
Xuéxiào kuài fàngjià le ba?  
Is the school having holiday soon?

B: 快了，还有一个星期。

Kuài le, hái yǒu yí ge yuè.

Yes, there is only a month left.

A: 这学期你有几门课?

Zhè xuéqī nǐ yǒu jǐ mén kè?

How many subjects do you have this semester?

B: 只有两门课。

Zhǐ yǒu liǎng mén kè.

Only two subjects.

A: 是什么课?

Shì shénme kè?

What are the subjects?

B: 商业汉语和国际贸易。

Shāngyè hànyǔ hé guójì màooyì.

Commercial Chinese and International Trade.

A: 这两门课都跟经济有关系。

Zhè liǎng mén kè dōu gēn jīngjì yǒu guānxì.

These two subjects are related to economics.

B: 对。我打算毕业以后到贸易公司工作。

Duì. Wǒ dǎsuàn bìyè yǐhòu dào màooyì gōngsī gōngzuò.

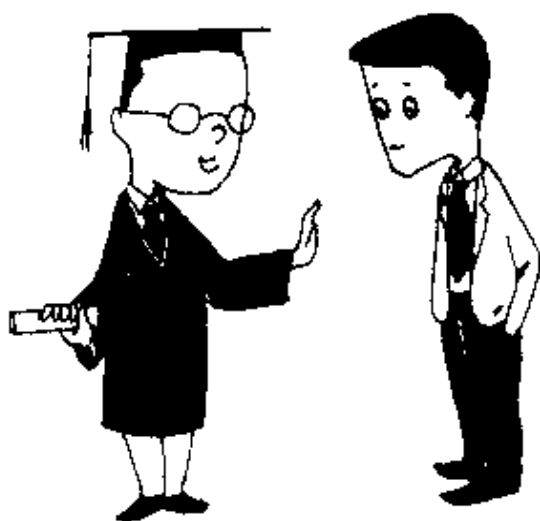
Right, I plan to work at a trading company after graduation.

A: 你为什么学习商业汉语? 想去中国做买卖吗?

Nǐ wèi shénme xuéxí shāngyè Hànyǔ? Xiǎng qù Zhōngguó zuò mǎimai ma?

Why do you learn commercial Chinese? Are you thinking of going to China for business dealings?

B: 是, 最近中国的工业和农业都有很大进步, 经济发展



很快，我要去中国做买卖。

Shì, zuìjìn Zhōngguó de gōngyè hé nóngyè dōu yǒu hěn dà jìnbù, jīngjì fāzhǎn hěn kuài, wǒ yào qù Zhōngguó zuò mǎimai.

Yes. There have been great improvements in China's industry and agriculture recently. The pace of economics development is very fast. I want to go to China for business dealing.

A: 那你应该努力学习汉语。

Nà nǐ yīnggāi nǔlì xuéxí Hànyǔ.

You Should work hard at learning Chinese then.

B: 我很努力，天天上汉语课，天天看中文报纸。

Wǒ hěn nǔlì, tiāntiān shàng Hànyǔ kè, tiāntiān kàn Zhōngwén

bàozhǐ.

I work very hard, go for Chinese class and read Chinese newspaper everyday.

A: 祝你学习进步。

Zhù nǐ xuéxí jìn bù.

Wish you success in your learning.

B: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

(二)

A: 你是哪个学校毕业的?

Nǐ shì nǎ ge xuéxiào bìyè de?

Where were you from before graduation?

B: 我是北京对外经济贸易大学毕业的。

Wǒ shì Běijīng Duiwài Jīngjì Màooyì Dàxué bìyè de.

I graduated from Beijing foreign Economics Trading University.

A: 你的专业是什么?

Nǐ de zhuānyè shì shénme?

What is your specialized area?

B: 我的专业是国际贸易。

Wǒ de zhuānyè shì guójì màooyì.

I am specialized in international trade.

A: 这个专业有意思吗?

Zhè ge zhuānyè yǒu yìsi ma?

Is this specialized area interesting?

B: 非常有意思。

Fēicháng yǒu yìsi.

It is very interest.

A: 你们学习的课都和国际贸易有关系吧?

Nǐmen xuéxí de kè dōu hé guójì mào yì yǒu guānxì ba?

Are all lessons related to international trade.

B: 是, 我们学习了怎么谈判、怎么定货、怎么签合同……

Shì, wǒmen xuéxí le zěnmē tán pàn, zěnmē dìng huò, zěnmē qiān hé tóng...

Yes, we learn how to negotiate, how to make orders, how to sign contracts...

A: 学习外语了吗?

Xuéxí wàiyǔ le ma?

Have you learned foreign language?

B: 学习了两种外语, 英语和德语。

Xuéxí le liǎng zhǒng wàiyǔ, Yīngyǔ hé Déyǔ.

I have learned two languages, English and Germany.

### (三) 张新快毕业了

张新是北京对外经济贸易大学的学生, 专业是国际贸易。今年八月他就要毕业了。他打算毕业以后到一家合资企业去工作。在那样的企业工作比较辛苦, 可是很有意思。现在, 张新正在努力学习, 准备考试。除了准备专业



课外，他还要准备外语考试。他希望每门课都考得好。这对他找工作很重要。

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “从”，是一个介词，引出动作的起点。

“从” is a preposition, introduce the commencement of the movement.

(他) 从家里来 (He) came from home

(我) 从图书馆去你家 (I) came from library to your home.

2. “是……的”，“是……的”除了强调时间、强调目的以外，还可以强调处所，被强调的处所放在“是……的”中间，常常要用介词“从”和“在”。

“是…的”，“是…的” besides emphasizing time and objective, can emphasize locality too, the emphasized locality is placed between “是…的”. It often used preposition “从” and “在”。

(他) 是从日本来的 (He) is from Japan

(这本书) 是在商店买的 (This book) is bought from the store.

### Ⅳ. 练习: Exercises

1. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogue

(1) A: 你大学毕业了吗?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 你是哪年毕业的?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 是从哪个大学毕业的?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 你大学学的专业是什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

A: 你打算以后干什么?

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

(2) A: 你们快要考试了吧?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 这学期你考几门课?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 是什么课?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 你什么时候大学毕业?

B: \_\_\_\_\_

A: 祝你一切顺利!

B: \_\_\_\_\_。

2. 翻译: Translate

A. (1) 贸易公司      合资企业      商业汉语

(2) 签合同          学外语          准备考试

(3) 比较辛苦      努力学习      非常重要

B. (1) 来中国以前, 我在一家电器公司工作。

(2) 来中国以后, 我胖了很多。

(3) 考试以前, 我不打算出去旅游了。

(4) 下课以后, 我要去图书馆。

3. 用“是……的”回答下列问题:      Use “是…的” to answer the following questions

- (1) 你是什么时候出生的?
- (2) 张新是什么时候告诉你的?
- (3) 他是几点走了?
- (4) 你从哪儿来的?
- (5) 你在哪儿看到他的?

#### V. 生词:      New Words

- |     |    |          |     |                  |
|-----|----|----------|-----|------------------|
| 1.  | 毕业 | bìyè     | (动) | graduate         |
| 2.  | 商业 | shāngyè  | (名) | commerce         |
| 3.  | 经济 | jīngjì   | (名) | economy          |
| 4.  | 发展 | fāzhǎn   | (动) | develop          |
| 5.  | 从  | cóng     | (介) | from             |
| 6.  | 专业 | zhuānyè  | (名) | professional     |
| 7.  | 谈判 | tánpàn   | (动) | negotiate        |
| 8.  | 定货 | dìng huò |     | make orders      |
| 9.  | 签  | qiān     | (动) | sign             |
| 10. | 合同 | hétóng   | (名) | contract         |
| 11. | 外语 | wàiyǔ    | (名) | foreign language |
| 12. | 合资 | hézī     | (名) | joint venture    |
| 13. | 企业 | qǐyè     | (名) | enterprise       |
| 14. | 准备 | zhǔnbèi  | (动) | prepare          |
| 15. | 考  | kǎo      | (动) | exam             |

- 考试 kǎoshì (名) examination
16. 找 zhǎo (动) find
17. 重要 zhòngyào (形) important
18. 北京对外经济贸易大学  
Biějīng Duìwài Jīngjì Màooyì Dàxué  
Beijing Foreign economics Trading University
19. 张新 Zhāng Xīn name of person

## 33. 旅游 Traveling

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

321. 好久不见，你最近去哪儿了？

Hǎojiǔ bú jiàn, nǐ zuìjìn qù nǎr le?

Has been a long time since we met. Where have you been recently?

322. 北京国际啤酒节办得非常成功。

Běijīng Guójì píjiǔjié bàn de fēicháng chénggōng.

The Beijing international Beer Festival is organized Successfully.

323. 啤酒节结束以后，我又去了中国南方。

Píjiǔjié jiéshù yǐhòu, wǒ yòu qùle Zhōngguó nánfāng.

When the Beer Festival is over, I went to the southern part of China.

324. 听说桂林的风景是中国最漂亮的。

Tīngshuō Guìlín de fēngjǐng shì Zhōngguó zuì piàoliang de.

I have heard that the scenery at Guilin is the most beautiful in China.

325. 我拍了一些照片，你看看！

Wǒ pāile yìxiē zhàopiàn, nǐ kànkàn!

I have taken some photographs, you can take a look.

326. 这些山真奇特!

Zhèxiē shān zhēn qítè!

These mountains are really peculiar!

327. 漓江的水清得可以看见人。

Lí Jiāng de shuǐ qīng de kěyǐ kànjiàn rén.

The water at Lijiang is so clear that it shows the reflection of the people.

328. 我们大家都是爬山爱好者。

Wǒmen dàjiā dōu shì páshān àihào zhě.

All of us are mountain climbing activists.

329. 山上的树叶都红了，好看极了!

Shān shang de shù yè dōu hóng le, hǎo kàn jí le!

The leaves at the hill top have all turned red, it is extremely nice looking!

330. 祝你们玩儿得愉快!

Zhù nǐmen wánr de yúkuài!

Wishing all of you have an enjoyable trip!

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 好久不见，最近你去哪儿了?

Hǎojiǔ bú jiàn, zuìjìn nǐ qù nǎr le?

Has been a long time since we met, Where have you been

recently?

B: 我去中国了。

Wǒ qù Zhōngguó le.

I have gone to China.

A: 是去参加北京国际啤酒节的吧?

Shì qù cānjiā Běijīng Guójì Píjiǔjié de ba?

Are you there for the Beijing International Beer Festival?

B: 是, 那个啤酒节办得非常成功。

Shì , nà ge píjiǔjié bàn de fēicháng chénggōng.

Yes, the beer festival is organized successfully.

A: 可是, 啤酒节已经结束很长时间了!

Kěshì , píjiǔjié yǐjīng jiéshù hěn cháng shíjiān le!

However, the beer festival has been over for a long period of time.

B: 啤酒节结束以后, 我又去中国南方旅游了几天。

Píjiǔjié jiéshù yǐhòu , wǒ yòu qù Zhōngguó nánfāng lǚyóu le jǐ tiān.

After the beer festival is over, I went to Southern China for a few days travel.

A: 你去哪儿旅行了?

Nǐ qù nǎr lǚ xíng le?

Where did you go travelling?

B: 我去了桂林。

Wǒ qù le Guìlín.

I went to Guilin.

A: 听说, 桂林的风景是中国最漂亮的。

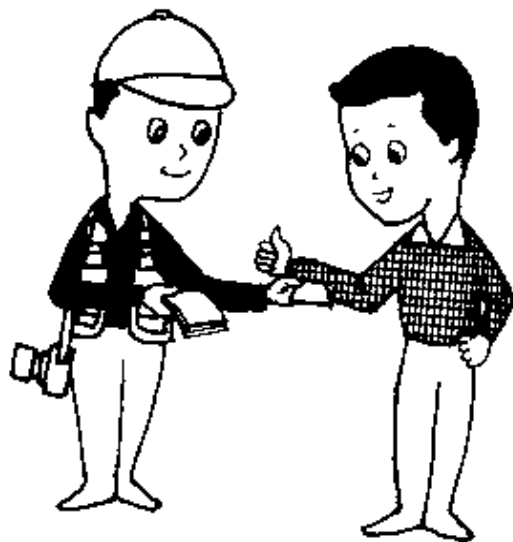
Tīngshuō, Guìlín de fēngjǐng shì Zhōngguó zuì piàoliang de.

I have heard that the scenery at Guilin is the most beautiful in China.

B: 大家都那么说。我拍了一些照片，你看看！

Dàjiā dōu nàme shuō. Wǒ pāi le yìxiē zhàopian, nǐ kànkàn!

All of them say so, I have taken some photographs, you can take a look!



A: 这些山真奇特！

Zhèxiē shān zhēn qítè!

These mountains are really peculiar.

B: 桂林的水也很有名，漓江的水清得可以看见人。

Guìlín de shuǐ yě hěn yǒumíng, Lí Jiāng de shuǐ qīng de kěyǐ kànjiàn rén.

The water of Guilin are famous too, the water at Lijiang is so



clear that it shows the reflections of the people.

A: 我还从来没去过中国。

Wǒ hái cónglái méi qùguo Zhōngguó.

I have never been to China yet.

B: 你去中国的时候，一定要去桂林。

Nǐ qù Zhōngguó de shíhòu, yídìng yào qù Guìlín.

When you go to China, you definitely have to go to Guilin.

(二)

A: 请问，去香山怎么走？

Qǐng wèn , qù Xiāng Shān zěnmē zǒu ?

May I ask how do I get to Xiangshan?

B: 顺着这条路一直往北走，再向左拐就到了。

Shùnzhe zhè tiáo lù yìzhí wǎng běi zǒu, zài xiàng zuǒ guǎi jiù dào le.

Follow this road and walk in the north direction and turn to the left.

A: 要走多长时间？

Yào zǒu duō cháng shíjiān?

How long does the walk take?

B: 大约三十分钟。

Dàyuē sānshí fēnzhōng.

It is approximately thirty minutes.

A: 谢谢！

Xièxie!

Thank you!

B: 不客气。你们是去爬山的吧?

Bú kèqì. nǐmen shì qù pá shān de ba?

You're welcome. Are you going to climb the mountain?

A: 是, 我们都是爬山爱好者。

Shì, Wǒmen dōu shì pá shān àihào zhě.

Yes, all of us are mountain-climbing activists.

B: 爬山是很好的运动, 很锻炼身体。

Pá shān shì hěn hǎo de yùndòng, hěn duànliàn shēntǐ.

Mountain climbing is a very good sports. It is very good at training the body.

A: 听说香山的风景也很漂亮?

Tīng shuō Xiāng Shān de fēngjǐng yě hěn piàoliang?

I have heard that the scenery at Xiangshan is very beautiful too?

B: 现在是秋天, 山上的树叶都红了, 好看极了。

Xiànzài shì qiūtiān, shān shàng de shù yè dōu hóng le, hǎo kàn jí le.

It is autumn now. The leaves at hilltop have turned red. It is extremely nice looking.

A: 那到香山玩儿的人一定很多了?

Nà dào Xiāng Shān wánr de rén yí dìng hěn duō le?

There must be a lot of people at Xiangshan then?

B: 非常多, 大家都希望一边爬山, 一边看风景。

Fēicháng duō, dàjiā dōu xīwàng yìbiān pá shān, yìbiān kàn fēngjǐng.

There are a lot. Everybody wish to climb the mountain and view the scenery at the same time.

A: 谢谢您, 再见!

Xièxie nín , zàijiàn!

Thank you. Good bye!

B: 再见, 祝你们玩儿得愉快!

Zàijiàn , zhù nǐmen wánr de yúkuài!

Goodbye, Wishing all of you have an enjoyable trip!

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “好久不见”, 是常用的问候语, 常说:

“好久不见”, often used as greetings, we often say it.

好久不见, 身体好吗?

It has been a long time since we met , is your healthy in the pink?

好久不见, 工作忙吗?

It has been a long time since we met, Is your work busy?

2. “清得可以看见人”, 是动补词组, 补语“可以看见人”, 补充说明“清”的程度。这种动补词组在汉语里非常丰富, 可以是“动词+补语”, 也可以是“形容词+补语”, 补语可以是简单的动词、形容词, 也可以是复杂的词组。补语前边往往用一个“得”。

“清得可以看见人” is a verb-complement phrase, complement “可以看见人” further explain “清”s degree. This kind of verb-complement phrases are very abundant in Chinese, can be “verb

+ complement”, can be “adjective + complement” too, complement can be simple verbs or adjectives, can be complicated phrases. There is always a “得” before the complement.

弹得好→动+得+形 play well→verb+得+adjective

玩得非常高兴→动+得+词组 play happily→verb+得+phrase

清得可以看见人→形+得+词组 so clear that shows reflection of the people adj+得+phrase

3. “山上”，“上”表示方位，它可以直接出现在名词后表示处所。  
“山上”，“上”indicates locality, it can appear after nouns directly to indicate locality.

火车上（人很多）。 There are many people on the train.

说明书上（有产品介绍）。 Products are introduced on the instruction manual.

报纸上（有这个信息）。 There is an information on the newspaper.

#### IV. 练习： Exercises

1. 选择合适的词组组成动补词组（带“得”）： choose the suitable phrase to join as complementary phrase (with “得”)

A	B
玩	很舒服
吃	很有意思
进步	非常成功
合作	很顺利

休息	很愉快
讨论	很好
穿	很漂亮
睡	很快

2. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

山上 火车上 报纸上 说明书上 衣服上

- (1) 你买 ( ) 没有口袋。
- (2) ( ) 的风景非常漂亮。
- (3) 我在 ( ) 看见了这个消息。
- (4) ( ) 人很多。
- (5) 你看看 ( ) 有没有产品质量的介绍。

V. 生词: New Words

1. 好久 hǎojiǔ (副) long time
2. 见 jiàn (动) see
3. 节 jié (名) festival
4. 办 bàn (动) organize
5. 成功 chénggōng (形) successful
6. 结束 jiéshù (动) end
7. 南方 nánfāng (名) south
8. 听说 tīngshuō (动) hear
9. 拍 pāi (动) take
10. 照片 zhàopiàn (名) photograph
11. 山 shān (名) hill

12.	奇特	qítè	(形)	peculiar
13.	清	qīng	(形)	clear
14.	大家	dàjiā	(名)	all of us
15.	爬	pá	(动)	climb
16.	树叶	shùyè	(名)	leaf
17.	桂林	Guìlín		Guilin
18.	漓江	Lí Jiāng		Lijiang
19.	香山	Xiāng Shān		Xiangshan

## 34. 昨天、今天、明天…… yesterday, today and tomorrow

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

331. 我等了 you 一个小时了。

Wǒ děng le nǐ yí ge xiǎoshí le.

I have waited for you for an hour.

332. 我昨天夜里没睡好，今天早上起晚了。

Wǒ zuótiān yèlǐ méi shuì hǎo, jīntiān zǎoshang qǐ wǎn le.

I did not sleep well last night. I have got up late this morning.

333. 他写了一份申请。

Tā xiě le yí fèn shēnqǐng.

He has filled in a copy of application form.

334. 我申请明年去中国留学。

Wǒ shēnqǐng míngnián qù Zhōngguó liúxué.

I have applied for the over seas study trip to China next year.

335. 明年九月动身，后年7月回来。

Míngnián jiǔ yuè dòng shēn, hòunián qī yuè huílái.

I would set off next September, coming back in July the year after next.

336. 我的消息很可靠。

Wǒ de xiāoxi hěn kěkào.

My information are very valuable.

337. 上个星期刚回来。

Shàng ge xīngqī gāng huílai.

Just came back last week.

338. 下个月去香港。

Xià ge yuè qù Xiānggǎng.

Going to Hongkong next month.

339. 我看你应该八月下旬动身。

Wǒ kàn nǐ yīnggāi bā yuè xiàxún dòng shēn.

I think you should set out at the end of August.

340. 我不是上旬去，是中旬去。

Wǒ bú shì shàngxún qù, shì zhōngxún qù.

I am not going in the beginning of the month but in the middle of the month.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 听说你最近去中国了!

Tīngshuō nǐ zuìjìn qù Zhōngguó le!

I have heard that you have been to China recently!

B: 我去北京参加了一个商品定货会。

Wǒ qù Běijīng cānjiā le yí ge shāngpǐn dìng huò huì.



I have gone to Beijing to participate in a commodity ordering fair.

A: 什么时候去的?

Shénme shíhou qù de?

When did you go there?

B: 上个月十五号。

Shàng ge yuè shíwǔ hào.

The 15th of last month.

A: 去了多长时间?

Qù le duō cháng shíjiān?

How long have you been there?

B: 大约三个星期。

Dàyuē sān ge xīngqī.

Approximately three weeks.

A: 三个星期一直住在北京吗?

Sān ge xīngqī yìzhí zhùzài Běijīng ma?

Have you been staying in Beijing for the whole three weeks?

B: 不, 在北京住了九天, 又去上海玩儿了一个星期。

Bù, zài Běijīng zhù le jiǔ tiān, yòu qù Shànghǎi wánr le yí ge xīngqī.

No, I have stayed at Beijing for nine days, have been to Shanghai for a week.

A: 还有几天呢?

Hái yǒu jǐ tiān ne?

What about another few days?

B: 还有几天去了香港。

Hái yǒu jǐ tiān qù le Xiānggǎng.

The other days I went to Hongkong.

A: 下个月我也要去香港。

Xià ge yuè wǒ yě yào qù Xiānggǎng.

I am going to Hongkong next month.

B: 今天已经27号了，你下个星期就要去了吗？

Jīntiān yǐjīng èrshíqī hào le, nǐ xià ge xīngqī jiù yào qù le ma?

Today is already the 27th, are you going next week?

A: 不，我不是上旬去，是下个月中旬去。

Bù, wǒ bú shì shàngxún qù, shì xià ge yuè zhōngxún qù.

No, I am not going in the beginning of the month, I am going in the middle of next month.

(二)

A: 你怎么才来，我等了你一个小时了。

Nǐ zěnmé cái lái, wǒ děng le nǐ yí ge xiǎoshí le.

Why are you here at this moment. I have waited for you for an hour.

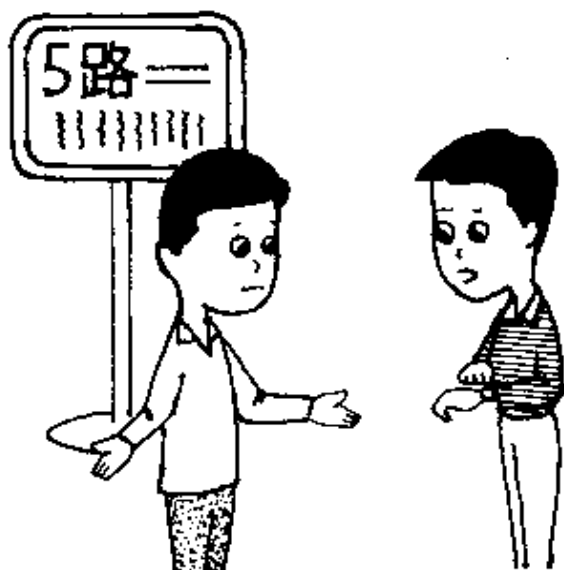
B: 对不起，我昨天夜里没睡好，今天早上起晚了。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ zuótiān yèli méi shuì hǎo, jīntiān zǎoshang qǐ wǎn le.

Sorry. I did not sleep well last night, I have got up late this morning.

A: 你身体不舒服吗？

Nǐ shēntǐ bù shūfu ma?



Are you feeling uncomfortable?

B: 不，我写了一份申请，睡得太晚了。

Bù, wǒ xiě le yí fèn shēnqǐng, shuì de tài wǎn le.

No, I have written an application. Slept too late.

A: 写什么申请?

Xiě shénme shēnqǐng?

What application have you written?

B: 我申请明年去中国留学。

Wǒ shēnqǐng míngnián qù Zhōngguó liúxué.

I apply for overseas studies in China next year.

A: 你打算留学多长时间?

Nǐ dǎsuàn liúxué duō cháng shíjiān?

How long do you plan to stay overseas?

B: 我打算去一年, 明年九月动身, 后年八月回来。

Wǒ dǎsuàn qù yì nián, míngnián jiǔ yuè dòng shēn, hòunián bā yuè huílai.

I plan to go a year, set off next September, come back in August of the year after next.

A: 听说中国的学校九月一号开学。

Tīngshuō Zhōngguó de xuéxiào jiǔ yuè yī hào kāi xué.

I have heard that school starts on 1st of September in China.

B: 你的消息可靠吗?

Nǐ de xiāoxi kěkào ma?

Are your information reliable?

A: 很可靠, 我的一个朋友上个星期刚从中国留学回来。

Hěn kěkào, wǒ de yí ge péngyou shàng ge xīngqī gāng cóng Zhōngguó liúxué huílai.

Very reliable, my friend just came back from China last week.

B: 那我九月动身晚了一点儿。

Nà wǒ jiǔ yuè dòng shēn wǎn le yìdiǎnr.

It is slightly too late for me to set out at September then.

A: 我看你应该八月下旬动身。

Wǒ kàn nǐ yīnggāi bā yuè xiàxún dòng shēn.

I think you should set off at the end of August.

B: 现在就决定动身时间还太早, 应该先写申请。

Xiànzài jiù juéding dòng shēn shíjiān hái tài zǎo, yīnggāi xiān xiě shēnqǐng.

It is too early to decide the date of setting off now, you should

fill in the application first.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “我等了你一个小时了”，汉语中表示动作持续的时间是在动词后加上时间词，如果动作已经完成，还可以在动词和时间词之间加上“了”。

“我等了你一个小时了”，in Chinese, to indicate the time of the experience of movement is to include words expressing time after verbs. If the movement has been completed, “了” can be included between the verb and the expressing time.

等了一个小时	wait for an hour
玩了一个星期	play for a week
住了九天	stay for nine days
去一年	go for a year

2. “刚”，“刚”是副词，用在动词前，强调动作是在说话前不久发生的。

“刚”，“刚” is an adverb, used before verbs to emphasize the movement took place not long before the talking is done.

刚吃过饭	just eaten
刚起床	just got up
刚回来	just got back

3. “上个月、下个月”，“上”和“下”在这里表示时间，除了和“月”配合使用外，还说“上星期，下星期”。

“上个月”、“下个月”，“上” and “下” here express time. Besides complementing with “月”，can be also said as “上星期，下星

期”。

4. “我看……”，这是一种表示自己看法的格式，意思是“我认为……”。

“我看…” this is a way to express one's thinking, means “我认为”。

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 回答下列问题: Answer the following questions

- (1) 你昨天晚上睡了几个小时?
- (2) 他每天工作多长时间?
- (3) 你打算在中国住几个星期?
- (4) 这两个公司合作几年了?

2. 翻译: Translate

- (1) 去年            今天            明年            后年
- (2) 上个星期      下个星期      上个月      下个月
- (3) 上旬            中旬            下旬

3. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

刚      才      就

- (1) 飞机场不太远，一小时（      ）到。
- (2) 八点上课，他八点五分（      ）到。
- (3) 八点上课，他七点五十（      ）到了。
- (4) 你怎么（      ）来，我等了你那么长时间。
- (5) 小王最近（      ）开始学习外语。

#### IV. 生词:           New Words

- |     |    |           |       |                        |
|-----|----|-----------|-------|------------------------|
| 1.  | 夜里 | yèli      | (名)   | night                  |
| 2.  | 起  | qǐ        | (动)   | get up                 |
| 3.  | 写  | xiě       | (动)   | write                  |
| 4.  | 份  | fèn       | (量)   | copy                   |
| 5.  | 申请 | shēnqǐng  | (动、名) | apply application      |
| 6.  | 留学 | liúxué    | (动)   | study abroad           |
| 7.  | 动身 | dòngshēn  |       | set off                |
| 8.  | 回  | huí       | (动)   | come back              |
|     | 回来 | huílai    | (动)   | come back              |
| 9.  | 可靠 | kěkào     | (形)   | reliable               |
| 10. | 刚  | gāng      | (副)   | just                   |
| 11. | 下旬 | xiàxún    | (名)   | beginning of the month |
| 12. | 上旬 | shàngxún  | (名)   | middle of the month    |
| 13. | 中旬 | zhōngxún  | (名)   | end of the month       |
| 14. | 香港 | Xiānggǎng |       | Hongkong               |

## 35. 坐飞机 Taking a plane

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

341. 您买哪次航班的飞机票?

Nín mǎi nǎ cì hángbān de fēijīpiào?

What is the flight number of the tickets that you have bought?

342. 请看一下您的护照、签证。

Qǐng kàn yíxià nín de hùzhào, qiānzhèng.

Please let me have a look at your passport visa.

343. 从北京到巴黎，要飞多少小时?

Cóng Běijīng dào Bālí, yào fēi duōshao xiǎoshí?

How long does it take to fly from Beijing to Paris?

344. 飞机八点起飞。

Fēijī bā diǎn qǐfēi.

The plane flies off at eight o'clock.

345. 当天下午四点到达。

Dāngtiān xiàwǔ sì diǎn dàodá.

It would arrive at four o'clock in the afternoon on the exact day.

346. 时间还早，不着急。

Shíjiān hái zǎo, bù zháojí.



It is still early, there is no hurry.

347. 我记得上次用了大约一个小时。

Wǒ jìde shàngcì yòng le dàyuē yí ge xiǎoshí.

I remember using approximately an hour last time.

348. 现在和那时候不一样了。

Xiànzài hé nà shíhòu bù yíyàng le.

It is different now as compared to then.

349. 这是我第一次来中国旅游。

Zhè shì wǒ dì yí-cì lái Zhōngguó lǚyóu.

This is my first trip to travel in China.

350. 海关检查一次比一次快。

Hǎiguān jiǎnchá yí cì bǐ yí cì kuài.

The custom checks have been faster ever since.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(在北京买飞机票 Buying air ticket at Beijing)

A: 小姐, 我买一张飞机票。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ mǎi yì zhāng fēijīpiào.

Miss, I want to buy an air ticket.

B: 您买哪次航班的?

Nín mǎi nǎ cì hángbān de?

Which flight are you buying?

A: 我买去法国巴黎的飞机票。

Wǒ mǎi qù Fǎguó Bālí de fēijīpiào.

I am buying an air ticket to Paris.

B: 请看一下您的护照。

Qǐng kàn yíxià nín de hùzhào.

Please let me take a look at your passport.

A: 好, 给您。

Hǎo, gěi nín.

All right. you can have it.

B: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

A: 请问, 从北京到巴黎要飞多少小时?

Qǐng wèn , cóng Běijīng dào Bālí yào fēi duōshao xiǎoshí?

May I ask how long does it take to fly from Beijing to Paris?

B: 大约飞九个小时。

Dàyuē fēi jiǔ ge xiǎoshí.

Approximately nine hours.

A: 飞机几点起飞?

Fēijī jǐ diǎn qǐfēi?

At what time does the plane take off?

B: 下午两点多。

Xiàwǔ liǎng diǎn duō.

Around two in the afternoon.

A: 巴黎时间当天下午四点多到达。

Bālí shíjiān dāngtiān xiàwǔ sì diǎn duō dàodá.

It would get to Paris around four in the afternoon on the exact

day according to time in Paris

B: 是, 这次航班时间不错, 白天动身, 白天到达。

Shì, zhè cì hángbān shíjiān búcuò, báitiān dòng shēn, báitiān dàodá.

Yes, the time of this flight is not bad. You set off in the day time and get there in the day time too.

A: 我要一张。

Wǒ yào yì zhāng.

I want a ticket.

## (二)

(两位外商在旅店收拾行李, 准备去机场, 他们要回国了。

Two foreign inventors packing their luggages in the hotel getting ready to go the airport, they are going back home.)

A: 我们快走吧, 时间不早了!

Wǒmen kuài zǒu ba, shíjiān bù zǎo le!

Let's go quickly. It is getting late!

B: 不着急。

Bù zháojí.

There is no hurry.

A: 飞机十点起飞, 现在已经八点二十了。

Fēijī shí diǎn qǐfēi, xiànzài yǐjīng bā diǎn èrshí le.

The plane is taking off at ten o'clock. It is already twenty minutes past eight now.

B: 从饭店到飞机场不太远, 半个小时就可以到。

Cóng fàndiàn dào fēijīchǎng bú tài yuǎn, bàn ge xiǎoshí jiù kěyǐ dào.

It is not too far to get to the airport from the hotel. It is only a half an hour ride.

A: 可是, 海关检查很慢。

Kěshì, hǎiguān jiǎnchá hěn màn.

However, the custom checks are slow.

B: 现在海关进步了, 检查签证、行李, 一会儿就好了。

Xiànzài hǎiguān jìnbù le, jiǎnchá qiānzhèng, xínglǐ, yíhuìr jiù hǎo le.

The customs have improved now, checking of visa and luggages would be done in a while.

A: 是吗? 我记得上次出海关用了大约一个小时。

Shì ma? Wǒ jìde shàngcì chū hǎiguān yòng le dàyuē yí ge xiǎoshí.

Is it? I remember spending almost an hour to get through the customs the last time.

B: 上次是哪一年?

Shàngcì shì nǎ yì nián?

When is the last checking?

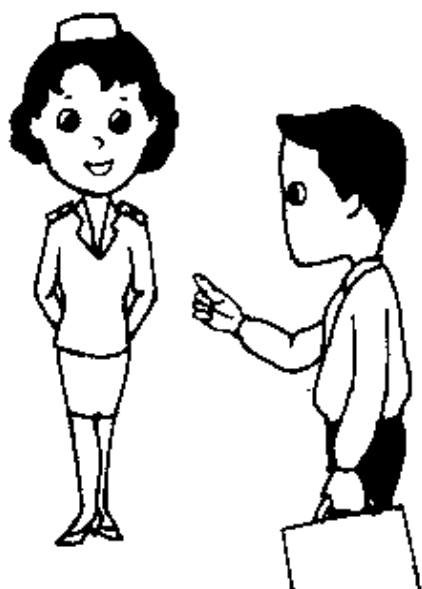
A: 一九九一年, 那时候我第一次来中国旅游。

Yījiǔjiǔyī nián, nà shíhou wǒ dì-yī cì lái Zhōngguó lǚyóu.

1991, It was my first trip to China for travelling.

B: 最近我经常来中国做买卖, 现在和那时候不一样了。

Zuìjìn wǒ jīngcháng lái Zhōngguó zuò mǎimai, xiànzài hé nà shíhou bù yíyàng le.



I have come often to China recently for business dealings, it is different now as compared to then.

A: 有什么变化?

Yǒu shénme biànhuà?

Are there any changes?

B: 海关检查一次比一次快。

Hǎiguān jiǎnchá yí cì bǐ yí cì kuài.

The custom checks have been faster ever since.

A: 是吗?今天我要看看。

Shì ma? Jīntiān wǒ yào kànkàn.

Is it? I would take note today.

## Ⅱ. 注释: Annotation

1. “从……到……”; 可以用来表示处所, 也可以用来表示时间。  
“从…到”, can be used to indicate locality, can be used to indicate time.  
处所: 从北京到上海 Locality: from Beijing to Shanghai  
时间: 从八点到十点 Time: from 8 to 10 o'clock
2. “现在和那时候不一样”, “A 和 B (不) 一样”, 是一种表示比较的方法。  
“现在和那时候不一样,” A and B are not the same, is a way to indicate comparision.  
今天和昨天一样, 都下雨。  
Today is the same as yesterday, is raining.  
我和你不一样, 我没学过中文。  
I am different from you, I have never learned Chinese.
3. “第二天”, “第” 用来表示序数, 表示方法是在数词前加上“第”。  
“第二天”, “第” is used to express ordinal, way of indication is to add “第” before numerals.  
第一 first  
第二十 twentieth  
第二十八 twenty-eighth  
第一百 hundredth

## IV. 练习: Exercise

1. 用指定词回答问题: Use the given words to answer the following questions.

- (1) 你每天上几小时课? (从……到……)
- (2) 你从哪儿来? (从)
- (3) 从北京到上海有多远? (从……到……)
- (4) 今天气温多少度? (一样)
- (5) 你也喜欢喝咖啡吗? (不一样)
- (6) 你以前到中国来过吗? (第)

2. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogue

- (1) A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 我要去中国旅行。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 明天动身。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 飞机九点十分起飞。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 第二天上午到达。
- (2) A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 这是我第一次去香港。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: 我去香港拜访一位朋友。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_?

B: 从北京到香港要飞两个多小时。

A: \_\_\_\_\_?

B: 护照和签证都办好了。

3. 翻译词组:        Translate

- |           |      |          |
|-----------|------|----------|
| (1) 有变化   | 没有变化 | 变化很大     |
| (2) 不着急   | 很着急  | 特别着急     |
| (3) 记得这件事 | 记得他  | 记得你喜欢吃辣的 |

IV. 生词:        New words

- |        |           |     |                        |
|--------|-----------|-----|------------------------|
| 1. 航班  | hángbān   | (名) | flight                 |
| 2. 飞机  | fēijī     | (名) | aeroplane              |
| 3. 护照  | hùzhào    | (名) | passport               |
| 4. 签证  | qiānzhèng | (名) | visa                   |
| 5. 飞   | fēi       | (动) | fly                    |
| 6. 起飞  | qǐfēi     | (动) | (of aircraft) take off |
| 7. 当天  | dāngtiān  | (名) | same day               |
| 8. 到达  | dàodá     | (动) | reach                  |
| 9. 着急  | zháojí    | (形) | hurry                  |
| 10. 记得 | jìde      | (动) | remember               |
| 11. 上次 | shàngcì   | (动) | last time              |
| 12. 用  | yòng      | (动) | use                    |
| 13. 一样 | yíyàng    | (形) | similar                |
| 14. 海关 | hǎiguān   | (名) | customs                |
| 15. 检查 | jiǎnchá   | (动) | check                  |



16.	白天	báitiān	(名)	day time
17.	行李	xíngli	(名)	luggage
18.	出	chū	(动)	go out
19.	变化	biànhuà	(动)	change
20.	巴黎	Bāilí		Paris

## 36. 饭店的服务 Services in the hotel

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

351. 我还要再呆几天。

Wǒ hái yào zài dāi jǐ tiān.

I have to stay a few more day.

352. 再找一个投资项目。

Zài zhǎo yí ge tóuzī xiàngmù.

To look for another investment programme.

353. 房地产买卖很热门。

Fángdìchǎn mǎimai hěn rèmén.

Real estate business is in great demand.

354. 他们希望外商投资盖高级饭店、酒店。

Tāmen xīwàng wàishāng tóu zī gài gāojí fàndiàn, jiǔdiàn.

They hope foreign investors would invest in the construction of first class hotel.

355. 饭店的服务很好，各国的饭菜都可以吃到。

Fàndiàn de fúwù hěn hǎo, gè guó de fàncài dōu kěyǐ chī dào.

The service at the hotel is very good. Food from various countries can be tried.

356. 我要退房间。

Wǒ yào tuì fángjiān.

I want to check out.

357. 请给我零钱。

Qǐng gěi wǒ língqián.

Please give me small change.

358. 请把钥匙留下。

Qǐng bǎ yàoshi liúxià.

Please leave the key behind.

359. 谢谢您的合作，欢迎您下次再来。

Xièxie nín de hézuò, huānyíng nín xià cì zài lái.

Thank you for your cooperation, hoping you would come again.

360. 我在这儿生活得很愉快。

Wǒ zài zhèr shēnghuó de hěn yúkuài.

I am living very happily here.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(两位外国客人在饭店边吃饭边谈话)

(Two foreign guests eating and chatting at the hotel)

A: 平田先生，定货会结束以后，您马上就回国吗？

Píngtián xiānsheng, dìngguòhuì jiéshù yǐhòu, nín mǎshàng jiù huí guó ma?

Mr. Hirata, Are you leaving for home immediately when the commodity ordering fair is over?

B: 不, 我还要再呆几天。你呢?

Bù, wǒ hái yào zài dāi jǐ tiān. Nǐ ne?

No, I am still staying for another few days. what about you?

A: 我也打算再呆几天, 我想再找一个投资项目。

Wǒ yě dǎsuàn zài dāi jǐ tiān, wǒ xiǎng zài zhǎo yí ge tóu zī xiàngmù.

I am planning to stay another few days too. I am thinking of looking for another investment programme.

B: 听说房地产买卖很热门。

Tīngshuō fángdìchǎn mǎimài hěn rèmén.

I have heard that real estate business is in great demand.

A: 我也听说了, 许多中国的公司希望外商投资, 盖高级饭店、酒店。

Wǒ yě tīngshuō le, xǔduō Zhōngguó de gōngsī xīwàng wàishāng tóu zī, gài gāojí fàndiàn, jiǔdiàn.

I have heard that too, many Chinese companies are hoping that foreign investors would invest in the building of high class hotels and restaurants.

B: 我们住的这家饭店也是外商投资盖的。

Wǒmen zhù de zhè jiā fàndiàn yě shì wàishāng tóu zī gài de.

This hotel that we are staying is built by foreign investor too.

A: 是吗? 这家饭店不错, 只是贵了一点儿。

Shì ma? Zhè jiā fàndiàn búcuò, zhǐ shì guì le yìdiǎnr.

Is it? This hotel is not too bad, but it is a little too expensive.

B: 可是饭店的服务很好, 各国的饭菜都可以吃到。

Kěshì fàndiàn de fúwù hěn hǎo, gè guó de fàn cài dōu kěyǐ chī dào.

However the service is very good. Food from various countries can be tried.

A: 我打算明天退房间, 去别的饭店住。

Wǒ dǎsuàn míngtiān tuì fángjiān, qù biéde fàndiàn zhù.

I plan to check out tomorrow and go to stay at another hotel.

B: 你要去哪家饭店?

Nǐ yào qù nǎ jiā fàndiàn?

Which Hotel are you going to?

A: 我去昆仑饭店, 上次我来北京就住在那里。

Wǒ qù Kūnlún Fàndiàn, shàng cì wǒ lái Běijīng jiù zhù zài nàlǐ.

I am going to Kunlun Hotel, I stayed there when I came to Beijing the other time.

B: 那里比这里便宜吗?

Nàlǐ bǐ zhèlǐ piányì ma?

Is it cheaper to stay there than to stay here?

A: 房间跟这儿一样, 但是价格比这儿的便宜。

Fángjiān gēn zhèr yíyàng, dànshì jiàgé bǐ zhèr de piányì.

The rooms are similar, but the prices are cheaper.

## (二) 退房间 To check out

A: 小姐, 我要退房间。

Xiǎojiě, wǒ yào tuì fángjiān.

Miss. I want to check out.

B: 您住了几天?

Nín zhù le jǐ tiān?

How long have you stayed?

A: 从十八号到今天, 一共五天。

Cóng shíbā hào dào jīntiān, yígòng wǔ tiān.

I have stayed here since the 18, it is 5 days in all.

B: 每天一百二十五元, 五天, 一共六百二十五元。

Měi tiān yìbǎi èrshíwǔ yuán, wǔ tiān, yígòng liùbǎi èrshíwǔ yuán.

Each day costs one hundred and twenty five dollars, it is 625 dollars altogether for five days.

A: 这是六百五十元。

Zhè shì liùbǎi wǔshí yuán.

This is 650 dollars.

B: 您有零钱吗? 请给我零钱。

Nín yǒu língqián ma? Qǐng gěi wǒ língqián.

Have you got small change? Please give me small change.

A: 请等一下, 我看看。有。

Qǐng děng yíxià, wǒ kànkàn. Yǒu .

Please wait a moment, let me take a look. Yes.

B: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

A: 没什么。

Méi shénme.

It is nothing at all.

B: 再麻烦您把钥匙留下。

Zài máfan nín bǎ yàoshi liúxià.

Please leave the key behind.

A: 好，给您。

Hǎo, gěi nín.

All right, you can have it.

B: 谢谢您的合作，欢迎您下次再来。

Xièxie nín de hézuò, huānyíng  
nín xià cì zài lái.

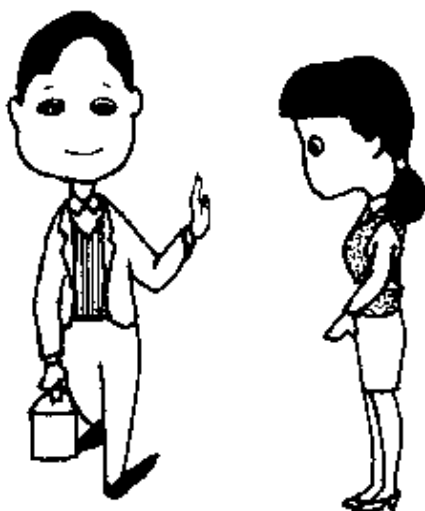
Thank you for your cooperation.

You are welcome to come again.

A: 谢谢你们的服务，我在这儿生活得很愉快。

Xièxie nǐmen de fúwù, wǒ zài zhèr shēnghuó de hěn yúkuài.

Thank you for the service. I have a pleasant stay here.



## 注释： Annotation

1. “吃到”，“动词+到”，表示动作完成。

“吃到” “动词+到” to indicate completion of movements.

买到 bought

听到 heard

吃到 ate

2. “把钥匙留下”，“把+名词”以后，可以用在动词前，“把”后的名词一般是后边动词的宾语，这个动词一般是复杂的。

“把钥匙留下,”“把+名词” can be used before verbs, the nouns after “把” are usually the object after the verb. This verb is normally complicated.

把汉语学好 to master Chinese

把申请书留下 to leave the application behind

3. “留下”, “动词+下”也表示动作完成。

“留下”“动词+下” can express the completion of movements too.

买下 bought

住下 stayed

留下 left

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

买到 吃到 看到 买下 住下 留下

- (1) 请你把说明书 ( ), 我想看看。
- (2) 昨天我在商店 ( ) 一本很意思的书。
- (3) 我从报纸上 ( ) 一个消息。
- (4) 你今天晚上不要走了, 在我们家 ( ) 吧!
- (5) 这么便宜的衣服, 我要把它们 ( )。
- (6) 在这个饭店可以 ( ) 各国的饭菜。

2. 用指定词完成句子(用“把……”句式): Use the given words to complete the following sentences.

- (1) 现在开始上课, 请同学们\_\_\_\_\_。(打开)
- (2) 明天早上我要回国了, 我今天晚上\_\_\_\_\_。(退了)



(3) 今天外面很冷，你要\_\_\_\_\_。(穿好)

(4) 今后我要和中国做买卖，我应该\_\_\_\_\_ (学好)

3. 翻译词组： Translate

(1) 找投资项目

找合作公司

找高级饭店

(2) 呆一会儿

呆几天

呆一年

(3) 盖饭店

盖学校

盖博物馆

(4) 退房间

退飞机票

退产品

4. 替换练习： Exchange exercises

(1) 请把衣服 穿好。

旧衣服	卖掉
-----	----

书	打开
---	----

说明书	留下
-----	----

(2) 他已经把这本书 看完了。

合同	签好
----	----

零钱	准备好
----	-----

申请	写好
----	----

## V. 生词:      New words

1.	呆	dāi	(动)	stay
2.	投资	tóu zī		invest
3.	项目	xiàngmù	(名)	programme
4.	房地产	fángdìchǎn	(名)	real estate
5.	热门	rènmén	(形)	in great demand
6.	外商	wàishāng	(名)	foreign investors
7.	盖	gài	(动)	build
8.	高级	gāojí	(形)	high-class
9.	酒店	jiǔdiàn	(名)	hotel
10.	服务	fúwù	(动、名)	serve service
11.	退	tuì	(动)	check out
12.	零钱	língqián	(名)	small changes
13.	把	bǎ	(介)	<i>a preposition showing disposal</i>
14.	留	liú	(动)	leave
15.	下次	xià cì		next time
16.	生活	shēnghuó	(动)	live
17.	昆仑饭店	Kūnlún Fàndiàn		Kunlun Hotel

## 37. 参加晚会    *Attending a party*

### I. 句型:        *Sentence Pattern*

361. 这个周末你打算做什么?

*Zhè ge zhōumò nǐ dǎsuàn zuò shénme?*

*What do you plan to do this weekend?*

362. 我还没有什么计划。

*Wǒ hái méiyǒu shénme jìhuà.*

*I have not any plan yet.*

363. 咱们去参加朋友的生日晚会吧。

*Zánmen qù cānjiā péngyou de shēngrì wǎnhuì ba.*

*How about going to a friend's birthday party.*

364. 我很愿意去。

*Wǒ hěn yuànyì qù.*

*I am most willing to go.*

365. 她很热情。

*Tā hěn rèqíng.*

*She is very warm.*

366. 我要准备什么礼物?

*Wǒ yào zhǔnbèi shénme lǐwù?*

*What gift should I bring along?*

367. 祝你生日快乐!

Zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!

Happy birthday to you!

368. 今天的晚会是怎么安排的?

Jīntiān de wǎnhuì shì zěnmē ānpái de?

How is today's party arranged?

369. 先交谈, 然后还有舞会。

Xiān jiāotán, ránhòu hái yǒu wǔhuì.

There is a conversation section first, a dance party then.

370. 没有机会好好儿玩儿玩儿。

Méiyǒu jīhuì hǎohǎor wánwánr .

There is no chance to enjoy thoroughly.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 这个周末你打算干什么?

Zhè ge zhōumò nǐ dǎsuàn gàn shénme?

What do you plan to do this weekend?

B: 我还没有什么计划。

Wǒ hái méiyǒu shénme jìhuà.

I have got no plans as yet.

A: 和我一起去参加朋友的生日晚会吧!

Hé wǒ yìqǐ qù cānjiā péngyou de shēngri wǎnhuì ba!

Join me to a friend's birthday party then!

B: 哪位朋友, 我认识吗?

Nǎ wèi péngyou , wǒ rènshi ma?

Which friend? Do I know the person?

A: 你认识, 是王红。

Nǐ rènshi , shì Wáng Hóng.

You know her. It is Wang Hong.

B: 是她呀! 她今年多大了?

Shì tā ya! Tā jīnnián duō dà le?

It is her ! How old is she this year?

A: 到星期六, 她就二十二岁了。

Dào xīngqīliù , tā jiù èrshí'èr suì le.

She would be twenty two this Saturday.

B: 我很愿意去, 不过她可能不认识我, 我去合适吗?

Wǒ hěn yuànyì qù , búguò tā kěnéng bú rènshi wǒ , wǒ qù héshì ma?

I am most willing to go , however , she may not know me. Is it appropriate for me to go?

A: 不要紧, 王红很热情, 她喜欢认识新朋友。

Bú yào jǐn , Wáng Hóng hěn rèqíng , tā xǐhuan rènshi xīn péngyou

It is all right. Wang Hong is very warm. She likes to make new friends.

B: 我要准备什么礼物?

Wǒ yào zhǔnbèi shénme lǐwù?

What gift should I bring along?

A: 你送给她一张生日卡吧!

Nǐ sònggěi tā yì zhāng shēngrikǎ ba!

Give her a birthday card then!

B: 好吧，生日晚会在哪儿开？

Hǎo ba, shēngri wǎnhuì zài nǎr kāi?

All right, where is the birthday party held?

A: 在她家，她家就在学校附近，走十五分钟就到了。

Zài tā jiā, tā jiā jiù zài xuéxiào fùjìn, zǒu shíwǔ fēnzhōng jiù dào le.

At her place. Her place is near the school, it is only fifteen minutes away.

(二)

A: 祝你生日快乐！

Zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè!

Happy Birthday!

B: 谢谢！这位是——？

Xièxie! Zhè wèi shì——?

Thank you! This is ——?

A: 我来介绍一下，这是我的朋友，他叫张新。

Wǒ lái jièshào yíxià, zhè shì wǒ de péngyou, tā jiào Zhāng Xīn.

Let me introduce. This is my friend. He is Zhang Xin.

C: 认识你很高兴。

Rènshi nǐ hěn gāoxìng.

Nice to meet you.

A: 认识你我也很高兴，祝你生日快乐！这张生日卡送给

你。

Rènshi nǐ wǒ yě hěn gāoxìng, zhù nǐ shēngri kuàilè! Zhè zhāng shēngrikǎ sònggěi nǐ.

It is nice to meet you too. Happy Birthday! This birthday card is for you.

B: 你太客气了! 那儿有各种酒和水果, 请随便。

Nǐ tài kèqì le! Nàr yǒu gè zhǒng jiǔ hé shuǐguǒ, qǐng suíbiàn.

You are too courteous! There are various types of wine and fruits. Please help yourself!

C: 谢谢, 你家真漂亮, 又大又舒服。

Xièxie, Nǐ jiā zhēn piàoliang, yòu dà yòu shūfu.

Thank you! Your home is very beautiful. It is large and comfortable.

A: 王红, 今天的晚会是怎么安排的?

Wáng Hóng, jīntiān de wǎnhuì shì zěnmē ānpái de?

Wang Hong. How is today's part arranged?

B: 先随便交谈, 喝酒, 一会儿吃生日蛋糕, 然后还有舞会。

Xiān suíbiàn jiāotán, hē jiǔ, yíhuìr chī shēngri dàngāo, ránhòu hái yǒu wǔhuì.

There will first be conversation and drinkings, Next there will be cake. Then there will be a dancing party.

A: 有舞会, 太好了! 张新, 今天晚上咱们要好好儿玩儿玩儿。

Yǒu wǔhuì, tài hǎo le! Zhāng Xīn, jīntiān wǎnshang zánmen yào hǎohǎo wánwánr.

There is a dance party. It is great! Zhang Xin, let's enjoy ourselves thoroughly tonight!

C: 是啊，最近学习太忙了，一直没有机会好好儿玩儿玩儿。

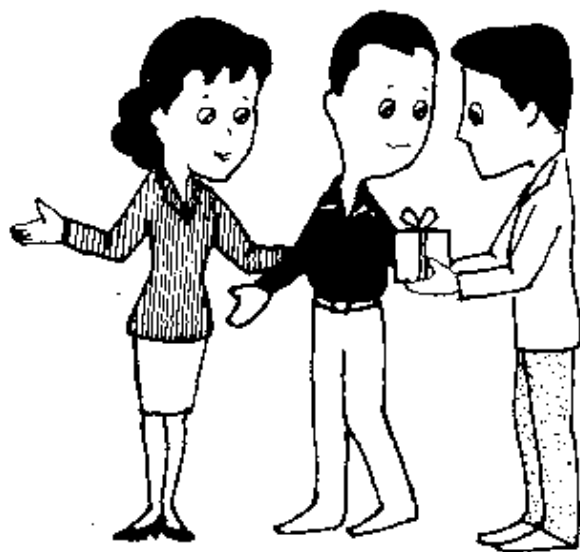
Shì a, zuìjìn xuéxí tài máng le, yìzhí méiyǒu jīhuì hǎohǎor wánwánr.

Yes, learning is getting busier recently, there is no chance to enjoy thoroughly.

A: 走，咱们先去喝点儿什么！

Zǒu, zánmen xiān qù hē diǎnr shénme!

Come, let's get something to drink first.



C: 喝点儿葡萄酒吧，白酒我不会喝。

Hē diǎnr pútáojiǔ ba, báijiǔ wǒ bú huì hē.

Drink some grape wine then, I do not drink white wine.



### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “咱们”，用“咱们”时，一定包括听话人在内，用“我们”时，听话人可以不包括在内。

“咱们”，when “咱们” is used, it definitely include the listener, when “我们” is used, the listener can be not included.

2. “好好儿玩儿玩儿”，“好好”是形容词“好”的重叠式。用在动词前，第二个“好”读作阴平，并且“儿化”。

“好好儿玩儿玩儿”，“好好” is the reduplicated form of adjective “好”。Use before verbs, the second “好” is read as the first tone, “儿” is added after it.

好好儿学习 learn properly

好好儿休息 rest properly

好好儿玩一天 play whole heartedly

### Ⅳ. 练习: Exercises

#### 1. 翻译词组: Translate

- (1) 有机会 没有机会 好机会 找机会  
(2) 开晚会 开舞会 开交易会  
(3) 祝一切顺利 祝生活愉快 祝生日快乐  
(4) 安排计划 安排工作 安排学习

2. 用“好好儿……”完成下列句子: Use “好好儿” to complete the following sentences.

- (1) 你有机会去中国留学真好, 你应该\_\_\_\_\_
- (2) 我要\_\_\_\_\_我们的旅行计划。
- (3) 你最近身体不太好, 要\_\_\_\_\_
- (4) 这个博物馆我很喜欢, 我要\_\_\_\_\_一天。
- (5) 咱们两个公应该\_\_\_\_\_合作问题。

3. 回答问题: Answer the following questions

- (1) 您什么时候有空?我想去拜访您。
- (2) 我晚上七点半去您家合适吗。
- (3) 我要准备什么礼物吗?
- (4) 今天的晚会是怎么安排的?
- (5) 这个周末咱们一起去参加朋友的生日晚会吧?
- (6) 周末你打算干什么?

IV. 生词: New words

1. 周末	zhōumò	(名)	weekend
2. 计划	jìhuà	(名)	plan
3. 咱们	zánmen	(代)	we
4. 晚会	wǎnhuì	(名)	party
5. 愿意	yuànyì	(动)	willing
6. 热情	rèqíng	(形)	warm
7. 礼物	lǐwù	(名)	present gift
8. 快乐	kuàilè	(形)	happy

9.	安排	ānpái	(动)	arrange
10.	交谈	jiāotán	(动、名)	converse conversation
11.	舞会	wǔhuì	(名)	dance party
12.	机会	jīhuì	(名)	chance
13.	卡	kǎ	(名)	card
	生日卡	shēngrìkǎ	(名)	birthday card
14.	开	kāi	(动)	open
15.	蛋糕	dàngāo	(名)	cake
16.	酒	jiǔ	(名)	wine
	葡萄酒	pútáojiǔ	(名)	grape wine
	白酒	báijiǔ	(名)	white wine

## 38. 进口纺织品 Importing textiles

### 1. 句型: Sentence Pattern

371. 您主要做什么买卖?

Nín zhǔyào zuò shénme mǎimai?

What kind of business do you mainly deal with?

372. 我们对中国的纺织品很感兴趣。

Wǒmen duì Zhōngguó de fǎngzhīpǐn hěn gǎn xìngqù.

We are very interested in China's textiles.

373. 上海生产的真丝衬衫花色很漂亮，款式很新颖。

Shànghǎi shēngchǎn de zhēnsī chènshān huāsè hěn piàoliang,  
kuǎnshì hěn xīnyǐng.

The colour and design of the Shanghai made silk shirts are  
very beautiful. The patterns are very original.

374. 价格合理，型号不合适。

Jiàgé héilǐ, xíng hào bù héshì.

The price are reasonable, the sizes are not suitable,

375. 质量没有问题。

Zhìliàng méiyǒu wèntí.

The quality has got no problem.

376. 您能帮助我联系一下儿吗?

Nín néng bāngzhù wǒ liánxì yīxiàr ma?

Can you help me in the contacts?

377. 我安排您和王经理见面。

Wǒ ānpái nín hé Wáng jīnglǐ jiàn miàn.

I would arrange for you to meet the manager Mr. Wang.

378. 这是询价单，请您先给他看看。

Zhè shì xúnjiàdān, qǐng nín xiān gěi tā kànkàn.

This is the price list. Please let him have a look first.

379. 您看见面安排在明天上午可以吗?

Nín kàn jiàn miàn ānpái zài míngtiān shàngwǔ kěyǐ ma?

Do you think it is all right to arrange the meeting at tomorrow morning?

380. 晚上我会给您打电话。

Wǎnshang wǒ huì gěi nín dǎ diànhuà.

I would give you a call at night.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(两位外商在聊天 Two foreign investors are chatting)

A: 您这次来主要想做一些什么买卖?

Nín zhè cì lái zhǔyào xiǎng zuò yìxiē shénme mǎimai?

What kind of business do you mainly deal with for this trip?

B: 我们对中国的纺织品很感兴趣。

Wǒmen duì Zhōngguó de fǎngzhīpǐn hěn gǎn xìngqù.

We are interested in Chinese textiles.

A: 纺织品有很多种，你们对哪一种感兴趣？

Fǎngzhīpǐn yǒu hěn duō zhǒng, nǐmen duì nǎ yì zhǒng gǎn xìngqù?

There are various types of textiles. Which type are you interested in?

B: 上海生产的真丝衬衫。

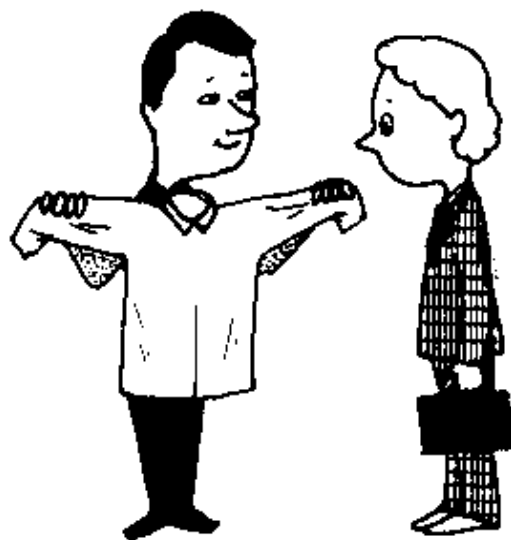
Shànghǎi shēngchǎn de zhēnsī chènshān.

Silk shirts from Shanghai.

A: 上海的真丝衬衫花色很漂亮，是不错！

Shànghǎi de zhēnsī chènshān huāsè hěn piàoliang, shì búcuò!

The colours and designs of silk shirts from Shanghai are very beautiful, not too bad!



B: 除了花色漂亮外, 款式也很新颖。

Chúle huāsè piàoliang wài, kuǎnshì yě hěn xīnyǐng.

Besides the beautiful colours and designs, the patterns are very original too.

A: 价格怎么样? 合理吗?

Jiàgé zěnmeyàng? hélǐ ma?

How are the prices? Is it reasonable?

B: 价格很合理, 不过……

Jiàgé hěn hélǐ, búguò……

The price are very reasonable, however……

A: 怎么? 质量不好吗?

Zěnmē? zhìliàng bù hǎo ma?

What? Is the quality not good?

B: 不, 质量也没有问题。是型号不合适。

Bù, zhìliàng yě méiyǒu wèntí. Shì xíng hào bù héshì.

No, there is no question about the quality. The sizes are not suitable.

A: 我知道了, 中国的衣服型号跟你们国家的不一样, 是不是?

Wǒ zhīdao le, Zhōngguó de yīfu xíng hào gēn nǐmen guójiā de bù yíyàng, shì bu shì?

I know. The sizes of Chinese clothes are different from the sizes in your country, isn't it?

B: 是, 我需要又肥又大的衣服, 我要多买一些大号衬衫。

Shì, wǒ xūyào yòu féi yòu dà de yīfu, wǒ yào duō mǎi yìxiē dà hào chènshān.

Yes, I need loose and large clothes. I want to buy some large shirts.

(二)

A: 怀特先生，我们的商品说明书您看过了吧？

Huáitè xiānsheng, wǒmen de shāngpǐn shuōmíngshū nín kànguo le ba?

Mr. Watt, have you seen our commodity introduction manual?

B: 看过了，很好！

Kànguo le, hěn hǎo!

I have seen, it is very good!

A: 您对我们的哪些产品感兴趣？

Nín duì wǒmen de nǎ xiē chǎnpǐn gǎn xìngqù?

Are you interested in any of our products?

B: 我对你们的地毯很感兴趣。

Wǒ duì nǐmen de dìtǎn hěn gǎn xìngqù.

I am interested in your carpets.

A: 您打算定货吗？

Nín dǎsuàn dìng huò ma?

Do you plan to make orders?

B: 是，您能帮助我联系一下儿吗？

Shì, nín néng bāngzhù wǒ liánxì yíxiàr ma?

Yes, can you help me in the contacts?

A: 可以，我可以安排您和纺织品进出口公司的王经理见面。



Kěyǐ, wǒ kěyǐ ānpái nín hé Fǎngzhīpǐn Jìnchūkǒu Gōngsī de Wáng jīnglǐ jiàn miàn.

Sure, I can arrange for you to meet the manager of the textiles import and export company Mr. Wang.

B: 这是询价单, 请您先给他看看。

Zhè shì xúnjiàdān, qǐng nín xiān gěi tā kànkàn.

This is the price list, please let him have a look first.

A: 好的。您看见面安排在明天上午九点, 可以吗?

Hǎo de. Nín kàn jiàn miàn ānpái zài míngtiān shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn, kěyǐ ma?

All right. Do you think it is all right to arrange the meeting at nine o'clock the next day?

B: 对不起, 明天上午我已经有了安排了, 明天下午吧!

Duìbuqǐ, míngtiān shàngwǔ wǒ yǐjīng yǒu ānpái le, míngtiān xiàwǔ ba!

Sorry, I have had arrangements tomorrow morning, tomorrow afternoon then.

A: 我试试, 晚上我会给您打电话的。

Wǒ shìshì, wǎnshang wǒ huì gěi nín dǎ diànhuà de.

I would try. I would give you a call at night.

B: 给您添麻烦了, 谢谢您!

Gěi nín tiān máfan le, xièxiè nín!

I am sorry to trouble you. Thank you!

## 注释: Annotation

1. “对……感兴趣”，表示某种愿望或要求，在商业洽谈中，表示要买某种商品。

“对…感兴趣”to express certain wishes or requests, In the process of commercial negotiation, it expresses wish to buy certain commodity.

2. “质量没有问题”，这里的“没有问题”表示符合要求，“很好”。

“质量没问题”，“没有问题” here means very good.

## IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 选择合适的词组成词组: Choose the suitable words to join as word phrases.

A	B
花色	好看
款式	漂亮
型号	新颖
价格	合适
质量	便宜
颜色	可靠

2. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

等 休息 问 看 检查 安排 联系

(1) 对不起我们要 ( ) 一下你的行李。

- (2) 请 ( ) 一下, 他马上就来。  
 (3) 劳驾, ( ) 一下去邮局怎么走?  
 (4) 你今天太累了, 需要好好 ( ) 一下。  
 (5) 请 ( ) 一下明天的晚会。  
 (6) 我打算最近和这个公司 ( ) 一下。  
 (7) 你 ( ) 一下外边下雨了没有。

3. 替换练习: Exchange exercise

- (1) 他对古典音乐感兴趣。

小王	法国历史
这个公司	中国的地毯
我	日本的电器

- (2) 我对滑冰特别感兴趣。

他	游泳
张新	爬山
怀特先生	吃中国茶

V. 生词: New words

- |        |            |     |            |
|--------|------------|-----|------------|
| 1. 主要  | zhǔyào     | (形) | main       |
| 2. 纺织品 | fǎngzhīpǐn | (名) | textile    |
| 3. 感兴趣 | gǎn xìngqù |     | interested |
| 4. 真丝  | zhēnsī     | (名) | silk       |
| 5. 衬衫  | chènshān   | (名) | shirt      |
| 6. 花色  | huāsè      | (名) | colour     |

- |     |          |           |     |                         |
|-----|----------|-----------|-----|-------------------------|
| 7.  | 款式       | kuǎnshì   | (名) | pattern                 |
| 8.  | 新颖       | xīnyǐng   | (形) | trendy                  |
| 9.  | 合理       | héilǐ     | (形) | reasonable              |
| 10. | 型号       | xínghào   | (名) | size                    |
| 11. | 帮助       | bāngzhù   | (名) | help                    |
| 12. | 联系       | liánxì    | (动) | contact                 |
| 13. | 见面       | jiàn miàn |     | meet                    |
| 14. | 询价单      | xúnjiàdān | (名) | quotation               |
| 15. | 国家       | guójiā    | (名) | country                 |
| 16. | 地毯       | dìtǎn     | (名) | carpet                  |
| 17. | 定        | dìng      | (动) | order                   |
| 18. | 怀特       | Huáitè    |     | <i>name of a person</i> |
| 19. | 纺织品进出口公司 |           |     |                         |

Fǎngzhīpǐn Jìrchūkǒu Gōngsī

The Fabric Import and Export Corporation

## 39. 南北气候差别

### Differences in weather between the south and the north

#### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

381. 夏天到了, 天气一天比一天热。

Xiàtiān dào le, tiānqì yì tiān bǐ yì tiān rè.

Summer is here. The weather is getting hotter by the day.

382. 每年夏天我都要到海边住一个星期。

Měi nián xiàtiān wǒ dōu yào dào hǎibiān zhù yí ge xīngqī.

I would stay at the seaside for a week every summer.

383. 我很喜欢在海滩上晒太阳。

Wǒ hěn xǐhuan zài hǎitān shang shài tàiyáng.

I like to sunbathe at the beach.

384. 上海的冬天又湿又冷。

Shànghǎi de dōngtiān yòu shī yòu lěng.

The winter in Shanghai is wet and cold.

385. 北京的冬天虽然气温低, 可是房间里很暖和。

Běijīng de dōngtiān suīrán qìwēn dī, kěshì fángjiān lǐ hěn nuǎnhuo.

The temperature of Beijing's winter is low, however, it is very cosy in the room.

386. 人们经常觉得外边比房间里暖和。

Rénmen jīngcháng juéde wàibian bǐ fángjiān li nuǎnhuo.

People often feel that outdoors is cosier than indoors.

387. 中国南北气候差别真大!

Zhōngguó nán běi qìhòu chābié zhēn dà!

The difference in weather between the southern of China and the northern of China is really great.

388. 北方下大雪的时候，广州还开着花。

Běifāng xià dà xuě de shíhou, Guǎngzhōu hái kāizhe huār.

When the northern parts is having heavy snowfalls, Guangdong is still filled with blooming flowers.

389. 我建议你寒假的时候去昆明。

Wǒ jiànyì nǐ hánjià de shíhou qù Kūnmíng.

I suggest that you should go to Kunming during the winter break.

390. 昆明四季如春。

Kūnmíng sìjìrúchūn.

In Kunming it is like spring throughout the year.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 夏天快到了!

Xiàtiān kuài dào le!

Summer is here.

B: 是，天气一天比一天热。

Shì, tiānqì yì tiān bǐ yì tiān rè.

Yes, the weather is getting hotter by the day.

A: 你喜欢热天吗?

Nǐ xǐhuan rè tiān ma?

Do you like hot weather?

B: 一年四个季节，我最喜欢的就是夏天。

Yī nián sì ge jìjié, wǒ zuì xǐhuan de jiù shì xiàtiān.

A year has four seasons, I like summer the best.

A: 我对夏天一点儿也不感兴趣，天气太热，人不舒服。

Wǒ duì xiàtiān yìdiǎnr yě bù gǎn xìngqù, tiānqì tài rè, rén bù shūfu.

I do not like summer at all. It is too hot. It makes me feel uncomfortable.

B: 你可以去游泳嘛!

Nǐ kěyǐ qù yóuyǒng ma!

You can go swimming.

A: 我很少去游泳。

Wǒ hěn shǎo qù yóuyǒng.

I rarely go swimming.

B: 为什么?那是很好的运动。

Wèi shénme? Nà shì hěn hǎo de yùndòng.

Why? It is a very good sports.

A: 我知道游泳对身体有好处，可是我工作太忙，没时间



游。

Wǒ zhīdao yóuyǒng duì shēntǐ yǒu hǎochu, kěshì wǒ gōngzuò tài máng , méi shíjiān yóu.

I know swimming is good for health, however, I am too busy with my work. I have got no time to swim.

B: 我是一个游泳爱好者，每年夏天我都要去海边住一个星期。

Wǒ shì yí ge yóuyǒng àihào zhě , měi nián xiàtiān wǒ dōu yào qù hǎibiān zhù yí ge xīngqī.

I am a swimming activist, I would stay at the seaside for a week every summer.



A: 那么你也喜欢在海滩上晒太阳吧?

Nàme nǐ yě xǐhuan zài hǎitān shang shài tàiyáng ba?

You must like to sunbathe at the beach too then?

B: 游一会儿泳, 晒一会儿太阳, 再游一会儿泳, 是夏天最舒服的享受。

Yóu yíhuìr yǒng, shài yíhuìr tàiyáng, zài yóu yíhuìr yǒng, shì xiàtiān zuì shūfu de xiǎngshòu.

It is the most comfortable enjoyment during summer to swim a while, sun-bathe a while, and swim for another while.

(二)

A: 寒假我打算去上海, 那儿的气候怎么样?

Hánjià wǒ dǎsuàn qù Shànghǎi, nàr de qìhòu zěnmeyàng?

In the winter holiday I plan to go to Shanghai, how is the weather there?

B: 上海的冬天又湿又冷。

Shànghǎi de dōngtiān yòu shī yòu lěng.

The winter in Shanghai is wet and cold.

A: 可是我听说上海的气温比北京高。

Kěshì wǒ tīngshuō Shànghǎi de qìwēn bǐ Běijīng gāo.

However I have heard that the temperature in Shanghai is higher than in Beijing.

B: 北京的冬天虽然气温低, 可是房间里很温暖。

Běijīng de dōngtiān suīrán qìwēn dī, kěshì fángjiān li hěn wēnnuǎn.

Though the temperature of winter in Beijing is low, it is very warm in the room.

A: 上海的冬天没有暖气吗?

Shànghǎi de dōngtiān méiyǒu nuǎnqì ma?

Is there any contral heating in Shangshai during winter?

B: 很多地方没有, 人们经常觉得外边比房间暖和。

Hěn duō dìfang méiyǒu, rénmen jīngcháng juéde waibian bǐ fángjiān nuǎnhuo.

A lot of places have got none. People often feel that outside is warmer than in the room.

A: 中国南北气候差别真大。

Zhōngguó nán běi qìhòu chābié zhēn dà.

The difference in weather between the southern of China and the northern of China is really great.

B: 是啊, 北方下大雪的时候, 广州还开着花。

Shì a, běifāng xià dà xuě de shíhou, Guǎngzhōu hái kāizhe huār.

Yes, when the northern parts is having heavy snowfalls, Guangzhou is still filled with blooming flowers.

A: 我最喜欢下雪了, 我应该去北方看看下雪以后的风景。

Wǒ zuì xǐhuan xià xuě le, wǒ yīnggāi qù běifāng kànkàn xià xuě yǐhòu de fēngjǐng.

I like snowfalls best. I should go to the northern parts to look at the scenery after snowfall.

B: 我建议你寒假的时候去昆明。

Wǒ jiànyì nǐ hánjià de shíhou qù Kūnmíng.

I suggest that you should go to Kunming during the winter break.

A: 昆明的气候很好吗?

Kūnmíng de qìhòu hěn hǎo ma?

Is the weather in Kunming very good?

B: 在中国，气候最舒服的地方是昆明，那儿四季如春。

Zài Zhōngguó, qìhòu zuì shūfu de dìfang shì Kūnmíng, nàr sìjìrúchūn.

In China the place with the most comfortable weather is Kunming, it is like spring all throughout the year.

### 注释: Annotation

1. “一天比一天热”，“一+量词+比+一+量词（重复前一量词）+形容词”表示程度越来越深。

“一天比一天热” “一+measure word+比+一+measure word+adjective” indicate the increasing of the degree.

一年比一年好 it gets better by the year

一件比一件贵 it sells expensive by the piece

2. “虽然……可是……”，“虽然”用在前一小句，表示承认某一个事实，后边与“可是，不过”等词配合，表示后边的情况不因为前边的事实而不成立。

“虽然…可是…” “虽然” is used in the first part of the sentence to indicate acknowledgement of condition in the second part of sentence does not exist not because of the truth in the first part of sentence.

他虽然70岁了，可是身体还很好。

Though he is seventy years old, his health is still good.

虽然我喜欢游泳，不过我不经常游。

Though I like swimming, I do not swim often.

3. “你可以去游泳嘛！”“嘛”是语气词，表示事情应该如此，显而易见。

“你可以去游泳嘛！”“嘛” here is to express tones, indicate that the matter should be as so, it is obvious.

4. “游一会儿泳”，“游泳”、“睡觉”等动词有时可以拆开用，中间加入“一会儿”，“一会儿”也常用在动词和宾语之间，表示动作的时间。

“游一会儿泳”，“游泳”，“睡觉” can be used separately, add “一会儿” in between, “一会儿” is often used between verb and objective to indicate the time of the movement.

打一会儿网球      play tennis for a while

看一会儿电视      watch television for a while

弹一会儿钢琴      play the piano for a while

#### IV. 练习:      Exercise

1. 翻译:      Translate

(1) 春天      夏天      秋天      冬天      季节

(2) 冷      热      高      低      湿

(3) 天气      气候      气温

(4) 下雨      下雪      刮风      阴天      晴天

(5) 太阳      暖和      温和

2. 用“一会儿”和指定词完成下列句子： Use “一会儿” and the given words to complete the following sentences.

- (1) 我每天下午都要\_\_\_\_\_。(打球)
- (2) 今天太阳很好，我们到外边\_\_\_\_\_。(晒太阳)
- (3) 他每天睡觉以前都喜欢\_\_\_\_\_。(看书)
- (4) 咱们休息一会儿\_\_\_\_\_。(听音乐)

3. 完成下列句子： complete the following sentences.

- (1) 虽然我很喜欢弹钢琴\_\_\_\_\_
- (2) 他虽然只学过一年汉语\_\_\_\_\_
- (3) 今天虽然很热\_\_\_\_\_
- (4) 虽然这件衣服的花色、样子都不错\_\_\_\_\_

4. 替换练习： Exchange exercises

(1) 天气一天比一天热。

生活	年	好
衣服	件	贵
检查	次	快

(2) 天气越来越热

生活	好
水果	便宜
雨	大
他	忙

#### IV. 生词:           New words

- |              |            |     |  |
|--------------|------------|-----|--|
| 1. 夏天        | xiàtiān    | (名) | summer                                       |
| 2. 海边        | hǎibiān    | (名) | seaside                                      |
| 3. 海滩        | hǎitān     | (名) | beach  |
| 4. 晒         | shài       | (动) | (of the sun) shine upon                      |
| 5. 冬天        | dōngtiān   | (名) | winter                                       |
| 6. 湿         | shī        | (形) | wet  |
| 7. 虽然        | suīrán     | (连) | though                                       |
| 8. 觉得        | juéde      | (动) | feel   |
| 9. 气温        | qìwēn      | (名) | temperature                                  |
| 10. 差别       | chābié     | (名) | difference                                   |
| 11. 雪        | xuě        | (名) | snow   |
| 12. 建议       | jiànyì     | (动) | suggest                                      |
| 13. 寒假       | hánjià     | (名) | winter holiday                               |
| 14. 四季如<br>春 | sìjìrúchūn |     | It is like spring all throughout<br>the year |
| 15. 嘛        | ma         | (助) | <i>particle</i>                              |
| 16. 暖气       | nuǎnqì     | (名) | cosy   |
| 17. 昆明       | Kūnmíng    |     | Kunming                                      |
| 18. 广州       | Guǎngzhōu  |     | Guangzhou                                    |

## 40. 看病 Seeing a doctor

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

391. 每年冬天我都咳嗽。

Měi nián dōngtiān wǒ dōu késou.

I would cough every winter.

392. 今年比去年厉害。

Jīnnián bǐ qùnián lìhai.

This year is more serious than last year.

393. 可能和抽烟有关系。

Kěnéng hé chōu yān yǒu guānxì.

Perhaps it relates to smoking.

394. 这个说法不一定对。

Zhè ge shuōfǎ bù yíding duì.

This saying may not be correct.

395. 抽烟多了容易得肺癌。

Chōu yān duō le róngyì dé fèi'ái.

It is prone to contracting lung cancer for smoking a lot.

396. 我不想吃饭，全身没有劲儿。

Wǒ bù xiǎng chī fàn, quán shēn méiyǒu jìn.

I do not feel like eating, my whole body is feeling weak.

397. 从昨天开始的。

Cóng zuótiān kāishǐ de.

It began from yesterday.

398. 让我给你检查一下儿。

Ràng wǒ gěi nǐ jiǎnchá yíxiàr .

Let me check for you.

399. 你得的是流行性感冒。

Nǐ dé de shì liúxíngxìng gǎnmào.

You have contracted influenza.

400. 打打针，吃点儿药就好了。

Dǎdā zhēn, chī diǎnr yào jiù hǎo le.

You would be fine for an injection and taking some medicine.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 你最近一直咳嗽?

Nǐ zuìjìn yìzhí késou?

Have you been coughing recently?

B: 每年冬天我都咳嗽。

Měi nián dōngtiān wǒ dōu késou.

I would cough every winter.

A: 今年比去年厉害。

Jīnnián bǐ qùnián lìhai.

This year is more serious than last year.



B: 可能和感冒有关系。

Kěnéng hé gǎnmào yǒu guānxì.

It may be related to influenza.

A: 我看和抽烟有关系。

Wǒ kàn hé chōu yān yǒu guānxì.

I think it is related to smoking.

B: 春天, 夏天, 秋天我也抽烟, 为什么不咳嗽?

Chūntiān, xiàtiān, qiūtiān wǒ yě chōu yān, wèi shénme bù késou?

I smoke too during spring summer autumn, why do I not cough?

A: 大夫说过, 在冬天, 抽烟多了就容易咳嗽。

Dàifu shuōguo, zài dōngtiān, chōu yān duō le jiù róngyì késou.

The doctor has said it is easier to get coughs during winter when too much smoking has been done.

B: 这个说法不一定对。

Zhè ge shuōfǎ bù yídìng duì.

This saying may not be correct.

A: 《健康日报》上也是这么说的。

《Jiànkāng Rìbào》shang yě shì zhème shuō de.

It is said so even in the 《Jiankang Ribao》

B: 报上还说抽烟多了容易得肺癌, 你看我已经七十多岁了, 身体还这么好。

Bào shang hái shuō chōu yān duō le róngyì dé fèi'ái, nǐ kàn wǒ yǐjīng qīshí duō suì le, shēntǐ hái zhème hǎo.



The papers has said it is prone to contracting lung cancer for excess smoking. You can see I am already more than seventy years old my health is still in top condition.

A: 我建议你还是不要抽烟了，这样对身体有好处。

Wǒ jiànyì nǐ háishi bú yào chōu yān le, zhèyàng duì shēntǐ yǒu hǎochu.

I suggest that you should give up smoking, this is beneficial to the health.

B: 我已经抽了几十年了，怎么能马上停止不抽了呢？

Wǒ yǐjīng chōule jǐ shí nián le, zěnmé néng mǎshàng tíngzhǐ bù chōu le ne?

I have been smoking for years. How can I stop smoking at once?

(二)

(在医院看病      See a doctor at hospital)

A: 你身体哪儿不舒服?

Nǐ shēntǐ nǎr bù shūfu?

Where do you feel uncomfortable?

B: 我头疼、发烧、不想吃饭, 觉得全身没劲儿。

Wǒ tóu téng, fā shāo, bù xiǎng chī fàn, juéde quán shēn méi jìn.

I have got headache, fever, do not feel like eating and the whole body is weak.

A: 多长时间了?

Duō cháng shíjiān le?

How long has it been so?

B: 从昨天开始的。

Cóng zuótiān kāishǐ de.

It began from yesterday.

A: 让我给你检查一下。

Ràng wǒ gěi nǐ jiǎnchá yíxià.

Let me check for you.

B: 大夫, 我得的是什么病?

Dàifu, wǒ dé de shì shénme bìng?

Doctor, what illness have I got?

A: 你得的是流行性感冒。

Nǐ dé de shì liúxíngxìng gǎnmào.

You have contracted influenza.

B: 要紧吗?

Yào jǐn ma?

Is it serious?

A: 不要紧, 打打针, 吃点儿药就好了。

Bú yào jǐn, dǎ dā zhēn, chī diǎnr yào jiù hǎo le.

It is not serious, an injection and taking some medicine would do.

B: 能不能不打针?

Néng bu néng bù dǎ zhēn?

Can I not take the injection?

A: 也可以, 不过好得慢一点儿。

Yě kě yǐ, búguò hǎo dé màn yìdiǎnr.

It is all right too. However, it would slower to get well.

B: 请多给一点儿药。中药、西药都要一点儿。

Qǐng duō gěi yìdiǎnr yào. Zhōngyào, xīyào dōu yào yìdiǎnr.

Please give me more medicine, I want a little of both Chinese and western medicine.

## 注释: Annotation

1. “和抽烟有关系”, “有关系”在这里指原因, “关系”指人与人或人与事物之间的某种联系, 如“这两个公司有贸易关系”。(见31课)

“和抽烟有关系”, “有关系” here means the reason, “关系” also means the certain relationship between person and person or

person and thing.

Like: 这两个公司有贸易关系 These two companies has got trade relations (see Lesson 31)

2. “让我给你检查一下”。“让”是一个使令动词。用法是“让+表示人的名词或代词+动词”。

“让我给你检查一下儿” “让” is a verb which implicate the ordering mood, usage is “让+ personal nouns or pronouns + verb.”

让他看看 Let him have a look

让孩子们好好学习 Let the children learn properly

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 翻译: Translate

(1) 头痛 咳嗽 肚子疼 发烧

(2) 打针 吃药 喝水 休息

(3) 不抽烟 不喝酒 不生气

2. 完成对话: Complete the following dialogues

(1) A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 全身不舒服。

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 有一个星期了。

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 我不发烧。

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 我一直没吃药。

(2) A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 我一直咳嗽。

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 很厉害, 夜里也咳嗽, 不能睡觉。

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 以前冬天不咳嗽。

A: \_\_\_\_\_

B: 我从来不抽烟。

A: 让我给你检查一下。

3. 选择正确答案: Choose the correct answer

(1) A: 你怎么了?

B: (a) 我没有劲儿全身。

(b) 我全身没有劲儿。

(c) 我没有全身劲儿。

(2) A: 大夫, 我得的是什么病?

B: (a) 你是得的流行性感冒。

(b) 你得的流行性感冒。

(c) 你得的是流行感冒。

(3) A: 你每年冬天都咳嗽吗?

B: (a) 今年比去年厉害。

(b) 今年厉害比去年。

(c) 厉害今年比去年。

#### IV. 生词:           New words

- |     |      |                |     |                  |
|-----|------|----------------|-----|------------------|
| 1.  | 厉害   | lìhai          | (形) | serious          |
| 2.  | 可能   | kěnéng         | (形) | perhaps          |
| 3.  | 抽烟   | chōu yān       |     | smoke            |
| 4.  | 说法   | shuōfǎ         | (名) | saying           |
| 5.  | 容易   | róngyì         | (形) | easy             |
| 6.  | 肺癌   | fèi'ái         | (名) | lung cancer      |
| 7.  | 全    | quán           | (形) | whole            |
| 8.  | 身    | shēn           | (名) | body             |
| 9.  | 劲儿   | jìn            | (名) | strength         |
| 10. | 让    | ràng           | (动) | let              |
| 11. | 流行性  | liúxíngxìng    | (形) | epidemic         |
| 12. | 打    | dǎ             | (动) | hit              |
| 13. | 针    | zhēn           | (名) | injection        |
| 14. | 抽    | chōu           | (动) | extract          |
| 15. | 大夫   | dàifu          | (名) | doctor           |
| 16. | 健康日报 | Jiànkāng Rìbào |     | the Health Daily |

## 41. 宴会 Banquet

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

401. 您为我们准备了这个宴会，十分感谢！

Nín wèi wǒmen zhǔnbèi le zhè ge yànhuì, shífēn gǎnxiè!

Thank you very much for preparing this feast for us!

402. 哪里，请坐！

Nǎlǐ, qǐng zuò!

It is my pleasure. Please sit down.

403. 北京有很多地方可以参观、游览。

Běijīng yǒu hěnduō dìfāng kěyǐ cānguān, yóulǎn.

There are a lot of places in Beijing which are worth visiting.

404. 我们边吃边谈。

Wǒmen biān chī biān tán.

Let us eat and talk at the same time.

405. 为我们的友好合作干杯！

Wèi wǒmen de yǒuhǎo hézuò gān bēi!

Let's toast for our friendly cooperation.

406. 买卖越作越好。

Mǎimài yuè zuò yuè hǎo.

The business is getting better.



407. 请大家入席。

Qǐng dàjiā rù xí.

Everyone ! Please take one's seat.

408. 茅台酒不但味道很香，而且喝了很舒服。

Máotáijiǔ búdàn wèidao hěn xiāng, érqiě hē le hěn shūfu.

The taste of Maotai wine is not only fragrant, it is soothing to drink too.

409. 谢谢主人的热情招待。

Xièxie zhǔrén de rèqíng zhāodài.

Thanks the host for his warm hospitality.

410. 希望我们以后继续合作。

Xīwàng wǒmen yǐhòu jìxù hézuò.

Hope that we would be able to cooperate in the future.

## II. 课文： Text

### (一)

A: 马丁先生，欢迎您来中国做买卖。

Mǎdīng xiānsheng, huānyíng nín lái Zhōngguó zuò mǎimai.

Mr. Martin, welcome you to China for business dealings.

B: 见到您很高兴。您为我们准备了这个宴会，十分感谢！

Jiàndào nín hěn gāoxìng. Nín wèi wǒmen zhǔnbèi le zhè ge yànhuì, shífēn gǎnxiè!

It is nice to see you. Thank you very much for preparing this feast for us.

A: 哪里, 哪里! 请坐。您是第一次来中国吗?

Nǎlǐ, nǎlǐ! Qǐng zuò. Nín shì dì-yī cì lái Zhōngguó ma?

It is all right. Please sit. Is this your first trip to China?

B: 不, 是第二次。上一次是去广州参加商品交易会。

Bù, shì dì-èr cì. Shàng yí cì shì qù Guǎngzuōu cānjiā shāngpǐn jiāoyìhuì.

No, it is the second time. The previous time is to Guangzhou to participate in a trade fair.

A: 那么这是第一次来北京?

Nàme zhè shì dì-yī cì lái Běijīng?

This is the first time to Beijing then?

B: 对, 是第一次。

Duì, shì dì-yī cì.

Right, it is the first time.

A: 北京很大, 有很多地方可以参观、游览。

Běijīng hěn dà, yǒu hěn duō dìfāng kěyǐ cānguān, yóulǎn.

Beijing is very big. There are many places which are worth visiting.

B: 我打算在谈判结束以后, 再在北京住几天。

Wǒ dǎsuàn zài tánpàn jiéshù yǐhòu, zài zài Běijīng zhù jǐ tiān.

I plan to stay in Beijing for another few days when the negotiation is over.

A: 菜来了, 我们边吃边谈。

Cài lái le, wǒmen biān chī biān tán.

The dish is here, let's talk and eat at the same time.

B: 为王经理的健康干杯!

Wèi Wáng jīnglǐ de jiànkāng gān bēi!

Let's toast to the health of Manager Wang!

A: 为我们的合作干杯!

Wèi wǒmen de hézuò gān bēi!

Let's toast to our cooperation!

B: 祝大家一切顺利, 买卖越做越好。

Zhù dàjiā yíqiè shùnlì, mǎimai yuè zuò yuè hǎo.

Wishing everyone success in everything, the business is getting better.

(二)

A: 请大家入席。

Qǐng dàjiā rù xí.

Everyone, please take one's seat.

B: 谢谢! 我们这次来给贵公司添了不少麻烦。

Xièxie ! Wǒmen zhè cì lái gěi guì gōngsī tiānle bùshǎo máfan.

Thank you ! We have given your company a lot of trouble.

A: 没什么。为我们的友好合作干杯!

Méi shénme. Wèi wǒmen de yǒuhǎo hézuò gān bēi!

It is nothing at all. let's toast for our friendly cooperation!

B: 干杯!

Gān bēi!

Cheers!

A: 茅台是中国很有名的酒, 您觉得怎么样?

Máotái shì Zhōngguó hěn yǒumíng de jiǔ, nín juéde

zěnmeyàng?



Maotai is a famous wine in China. What do you think?

B: 很不错。不但味道很香，而且喝了很舒服。

Hěn búcuò, búdàn wèidao hěn xiāng, érqiě hē le hěn shūfu.

It is not too bad. It is not only fragrant, it is soothing to drink too.

A: 再来一杯吧!

Zài lái yì bēi ba!

Have another cup then!

B: 对不起，我的酒量不大，请给我一杯矿泉水吧。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ de jiǔliàng bú dà, qǐng gěi wǒ yì bēi kuàngquánshuǐ ba.

Sorry, my drinking capacity is limited, please give me a cup of mineral water.

A: 请多吃菜。这是一家四川饭店, 菜都有点儿辣。

Qǐng duō chī cài. Zhè shì yì jiā Sìchuān fàndiàn, cài dōu yǒu yìdiǎnr là.

Please eat more food. This is a Sichuan restaurant. The food are slightly spicy.

B: 菜都很好。谢谢主人的热情招待。

Cài dōu hěn hǎo. Xièxie zhǔrén de rèqíng zhāodài.

The food are very good. Thank the host for his warm hospitality.

A: 不必这么客气。

Búbì zhème kèqì.

There is no need to be so courteous.

B: 希望我们以后能够继续合作。

Xīwàng wǒmen yǐhòu nénggòu jìxù hézuò.

Hope that we would be able to cooperate in the future.

A: 为我们的友谊干杯!

Wèi wǒmen de yǒuyì gān bēi!

Let's toast to our friendship!

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “为”, “为”是一个介词, 后面跟上名词后, 用在动词前表示动作的对象、目的。

“为”, “为” is a preposition, nouns followed behind, used before verbs to indicate the movements target, purpose.

为我们检查身体      check the body for us

为孩子买衣服      buy clothes for the children

为友谊干杯      toast for friendship

2. “哪里”，“哪里”在这里是对别人感谢语的回答，表示不必客气。  
“哪里”，“哪里” here is the reply to other's gratitude, indicate that there is no need to be so courteous.

3. “边吃边谈”，意思同“一边吃一边谈”。其他如：  
“边吃边谈”， means the same as “一边吃一边谈”. other like:

边走边说    talk and speak at the same time

边吃边看    eat and look at the same time

4. “越做越好”，这是“越 A 越 B”式，表示随着 A 这种动作的继续，B 在程度上不断提高。

“越做越好”， “越 A 越 B” form, to indicate that with the continuity of movement A, the degree on B increase endlessly.

(我) 越走越累    (I) get tired as I walk

(雨) 越下越大    (The rain) gets heavier

5. “不但……而且……”，这两个连词常配合使用。

“不但…而且”， these two conjunctives often complement each other in usage.

他不但会说汉语，而且会说日语。

He not only speaks Chinese, speak Japanese as well.

这件衣服不但花色好看，而且价格便宜。

The color and design of the clothes is not only nice-looking, the price is cheap too.

## IV. 练习: Exercises

### 1. 选词填空: Fill in the following blanks

干杯 买火车票 弹钢琴 写申请书 找投资项目

- (1) 他经常在晚会上为大家 ( )。
- (2) 这位外商正在为他的公司 ( )。
- (3) 这我们的友谊 ( )。
- (4) 我明天要去上海, 请为我 ( )。
- (5) 她想去中国留学, 你能为她 ( )。

### 2. 翻译: Translate

- (1) 边走边谈  
边听边写  
边吃边喝  
边洗边玩
- (2) 不但大, 而且好  
不但去过, 而且去过三次
- (3) 十分高兴  
十分满意  
十分愉快  
十分友好

3. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

(1) 风越刮越大。

他	吃	胖
雨	下	大
我	走	累

(2) 我们继续上课

他们	讨论
你们	吃吧
我们	看电视

IV. 生词: New words

1. 为 wèi (介) for
2. 宴会 yànhuì (名) banquet
3. 十分 shífēn (副) very, fully
4. 游览 yóuliǎn (动) tour
5. 友好 yǒuhǎo (形) friendly
6. 干杯 gān bēi toast
7. 入席 rù xí take one's seat
8. 不但 búdàn (连) not only
9. 而且 érqiě (连) and
10. 主人 zhǔrén (名) host
11. 招待 zhāodài (动) receiving
12. 继续 jìxù (动) continue
13. 酒量 jiǔliàng (名) drinking capacity
14. 能够 nénggòu (动) able



15. 友谊 yǒuyì (名) friendship  
16. 茅台酒 Máotái jiǔ Maotai wine  
17. 矿泉水 kuàngquánshuǐ mineral water

## 42. 定货 Ordering goods

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

411. 您对刚才看的样品感兴趣吗?

Nín duì gāngcái kàn de yàngpǐn gǎn xìngqù ma?

Are you interested in the samples you have seen just now?

412. 请介绍一下你方的价格。

Qǐng jièshào yíxià nǐ fāng de jiàgé.

Please brief us about your price.

413. 为了报价方便, 请先谈一下大约要定多少。

Wèile bào jià fāngbiàn, qǐng xiān tán yíxià dàyuē yào dìng duōshao.

For the convenience of quoting price, please discussing the ordering quantity first.

414. 这是我们的报价单。

Zhè shì wǒmen de bàojiàdān.

This is our quotation.

415. 你们的报价几天内有效?

Nǐmen de bàojià jǐ tiān nèi yǒuxiào?

How long would your quoted price be still in effect?

416. 关于我们要定的数量，明天告诉您。

Guānyú wǒmen yào dìng de shùliàng, míngtiān gàosù nín.

Regarding our ordering quantity, we would tell you tomorrow.

417. 我觉得报价高了一点儿。

Wǒ juéde bàojià gāole yìdiǎnr.

I think the quoted price is slightly too high.

418. 如果你们定货数量大，价格我们还可以考虑。

Rúguǒ nǐmen dìnghuò shùliàng dà, jiàgé wǒmen hái kěyǐ kǎolù.

If your ordering quantity is huge, we can still consider the price.

419. 我们再降价百分之五。

Wǒmen zài jiàng jià bǎifēnzhī wǔ.

We would reduce the price by another five percent.

420. 不能再低了，这是最后的价格。

Bù néng zài dī le, zhè shì zuì hòu de jiàgé.

This is the final price.

## I. 课文: Text

### (一) 讨论定货

#### Discussing the placing of orders

A: 平田先生，你对刚才看的样品感兴趣吧？

Píngtián xiānsheng, nǐ duì gāngcái kàn de yàngpǐn gǎn xìngqù

ba?

Mr. Hirata, are you interested in the sample that you have just looked at?

B: 都不错，特别是丝绸衬衫，款式和质量我都很满意。

Dōu búcuò, tèbié shì sīchóu chènshān. kuǎnshì hé zhìliàng wǒ dōu hěn mǎnyì.

Not too bad, especially the silk shirts. I am very satisfied with the designs and quality.

A: 不但款式和质量好，而且价格合理。我建议您定一些。

Búdàn kuǎnshì hé zhìliàng hǎo, érqiě jiàgé hélǐ. Wǒ jiànyì nín dìng yìxiē.

Not only the designs and quality are good, but also the prices are reasonable. I suggest you should place some orders.

B: 您能不能介绍一下你方的价格?

Nín néng bu néng jièshào yíxià nǐ fāng de jiàgé?

Can you introduce the price of your party?

A: 可以，为了报价方便，请您先谈一下大约要定多少?

Kěyǐ, wèile bào jià fāngbiàn, qǐng nín xiān tán yíxià dàyuē yào dìng duōshao?

Sure, for the convenience of quoting price, can you please discuss the ordering quantity first?

B: 对不起，我不能马上决定。

Duìbuqǐ, wǒ bù néng mǎshàng juédìng.

Sorry. I cannot decide immediately.

A: 您还要和你们公司的老板讨论吧?

Nín hái yào hé nǐmen gōngsī de lǎobǎn tāolùn ba?

Do you have to discuss with your boss?

B: 是, 所以还是请您先报价。

Shì, suǒyǐ hái shì qǐn nín xiān bàojià.

Yes, that is why it is better for you to quote the price.

A: 好, 这是我们的报价单。

Hǎo, zhè shì wǒmen de bàojiàdān.

All right. This is our quotation.

B: 请问, 你们的报价几天内有效?

Qǐng wèn, nǐmen de bàojià jǐ tiān nèi yǒuxiào?

May I ask how long would your quoted price be still in effect?

A: 三天内有效。

Sān tiān nèi yǒuxiào.

It is effective for three days.

B: 谢谢, 关于我们要定的数量, 明天会告诉您。

Xièxie, guānyú wǒmen yào dìng de shùliàng, míngtiān huì gàosù nín.

Thank you. I would tell you tomorrow regarding our ordering quantity.

## (二) 讨论价格      Discussing the price

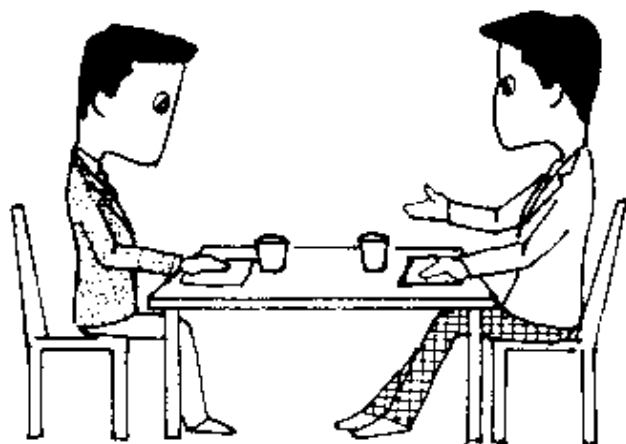
A: 王先生, 你们的报价单我已经看过了。

Wáng xiānsheng, nǐmen de bàojiàdān wǒ yǐjīng kànguo le.

Mr. Wang, I have seen your quotation.

B: 怎么, 还满意吧?

Zěnme, hái mǎnyì ba?



How is it? Are you satisfied?

A: 我觉得报价高了一点儿。

Wǒ juéde bàojià gāole yìdiǎnr.

I think the quoted price is slightly too high.

B: 这个说法我不能同意。我们的价格是比较合理的。

Zhè ge shuōfǎ wǒ bù néng tóngyì. Wǒmen de jiàgé shì bǐjiào hélǐ de.

I cannot agree with this saying. Our price are rather reasonable.

A: 能不能再降低一点儿?

Néne bu néng zài jiàngdī yìdiǎnr?

Can the price be reduced by a little?

B: 如果你们定货数量大, 价格我们还可以再考虑。

Rúguǒ nǐmen dìng huò shùliàng dà, jiàgé wǒmen hái kěyǐ zài kǎolǜ.

If your ordering quantity is huge, We can still consider the price.

A: 如果你们能够降低价格, 我们会大批定货。

Rúguǒ nǐmen nénggòu jiàngdī jiàgé, wǒmen huì dàpī dìng huò.

If you can reduce the price we would make huge orders.

B: 好, 为了合作成功, 我们再降低一点儿价格。

Hǎo, wèile hézuò chénggōng, wǒmen zài jiàngdī yìdiǎnr jiàgé.

All right. For the success of cooperation, we would reduce the price only a little.

A: 你们准备降低多少?

Nǐmen zhǔnbèi jiàngdī duōshao?

How much are you prepared to reduce the price?

B: 我们再降低百分之五。

Wǒmen zài jiàngdī bǎifēnzhī wǔ.

We would reduce the price by other five percent.

A: 能不能降价百分之八?

Néng bù néng jiàng jià bǎifēnzhī bā?

Can you reduce the price by eight percent?

B: 不能再低了, 这是最后的价格。

Bù néng zài dī le, zhè shì zuìhòu de jiàgé.

We cannot reduce any further, this is the final price.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “为了”，“为了”是一个介词，它的作用是介绍目的，一般用在句首。

“为了” is a preposition. Its purpose is to introduce objectives. It is normally used at the beginning of sentences.

为了学习汉语，他去了中国。 He goes to China to learn Chinese.

为了定货，讨论价格问题。 Discuss the question of prices to make orders.

2. “关于”，“关于”是一个介词，引出范围、对象，一般用在句首。

“关于” a preposition that points out the scope and target. It is normally used at beginning of sentence.

关于这个问题，明天再讨论。

关于定货数量，现在还不能决定。

Regarding this question we'll discuss tomorrow.

Regarding the ordering quantity we cannot decide as yet.

3. “如果”，“如果”常和“就”一起使用，表示假设和结果。有时不用“就”。

“如果” is often used together with “就” to indicate hypothesis and result. Sometime “就” is not used.

如果下雨，我们就不去了。

如果他不同意，我们再想别的办法。

If it rains we would not go.

If he disagrees, we would think of other ways.



4. “百分之五”，这是百分数的表示法。

this is the way to indicate the percentages.

百分之十      the percent

百分之五十    fifty percent

百分之百      a hundred percent

5. “大批”，“批”是一个量词，可以说“大批定货”也可以说“定一批”。

“批” is a measure word, can be said as “大批定货”, can be said “定一批” too.

#### IV. 练习: Exercises

1. 翻译: Translate

- |        |    |    |     |     |
|--------|----|----|-----|-----|
| (1) 价格 | 降低 | 报价 | 报价单 | 询价单 |
| (2) 投资 | 谈判 | 订货 | 签合同 | 合作  |
| (3) 数量 | 质量 | 花色 | 型号  | 款式  |
| (4) 方便 | 友好 | 满意 | 顺利  | 成功  |

2. 完成下列句子: Complete the following questions

- (1) 为了了解中国历史\_\_\_\_\_。
- (2) 为了减肥\_\_\_\_\_。
- (3) 为了合作愉快\_\_\_\_\_。
- (4) 关于产品质量问题\_\_\_\_\_。
- (5) 关于去中国的时间\_\_\_\_\_。

3. 造句:      Make sentence

- (1) 不但……而且……
- (2) 虽然……可是……
- (3) 如果……就……
- (4) 一边……一边……
- (5) 无论……还是……
- (6) 除了……还……
- (7) 因为……所以……

IV. 生词:      New words

- |        |           |     |              |
|--------|-----------|-----|--------------|
| 1. 刚才  | gāngcái   | (名) | just now     |
| 2. 方   | fāng      | (名) | party        |
| 3. 你方  | nǐ fāng   |     | your part    |
| 4. 为了  | wèile     | (介) | for          |
| 5. 报价  | bào jià   |     | quoted price |
| 6. 方便  | fāngbiàn  | (形) | convenient   |
| 7. 考虑  | kǎolù     | (动) | consider     |
| 8. 报价单 | bàojiàdān | (名) | quotation    |
| 9. 内   | nèi       | (名) | within       |
| 10. 有效 | yǒuxiào   | (名) | effect       |
| 11. 关于 | guānyú    | (介) | about        |
| 12. 数量 | shùliàng  | (名) | quantity     |
| 13. 如果 | rúguǒ     | (连) | if           |
| 14. 降价 | jiàng jià |     | reduce price |

15. 百分之 bǎifēnzhī percent  
16. 最后 zuìhòu (名) last  
17. 批 pī *measure word*

## 43. 看广告 Watching Advertisements

### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

421. 看电视是我的爱好。

Kàn diànshì shì wǒ de àihào.

Watching television is my hobby.

422. 广告节目是挺有意思的。

guǎnggào jiémù shì tǐng yǒu yìsi de.

Advertisements are quite interesting.

423. 形式越来越活泼。

Xíngshì yuèlái yuè huópō.

The forms are getting more lively.

424. 不但商品信息快，而且能了解中国的经济政策。

Búdàn shāngpǐn xìnxi kuài, érqiě néng liǎojiě Zhōngguó de jīngjì zhèngcè.

Not only the information on commercial goods is fast, but it is possible to understand China's economic policies.

425. 现在比以前开放多了。

Xiànzài bǐ yǐqián kāifàng duō le.

It is more open now as compared to before.

426. “经济信息” 节目也批评中国经济中的问题。

“Jīngjì Xìnxī” jiémù yě pīpíng Zhōngguó jīngjì zhōng de wèntí.

The programme “Economic Information” comment on the problems of China’s economy too.

427. 只有这样，才能进步得快。

Zhǐyǒu zhèyàng, cái néng jìnbù de kuài.

Improvements can only be made faster in this manner.

428. 我们公司想在中央电视台播个广告。

Wǒmen gōngsī xiǎng zài Zhōngyāng Diànshìtái bō ge guǎnggào.

Our company is thinking of telecasting an advertisement at the Central Television Station.

429. 马上安排有困难。

Mǎshàng ānpái yǒu kùnnan.

There is difficulty in making the arrangements immediately.

430. 我们的产品已经开始在中国销售。

Wǒmen de chǎnpǐn yǐjīng kāshǐ zài Zhōngguó xiāoshòu.

Our products have already begun selling in China.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一) 两个中国人在电视机前谈话

Two Chinese are chatting in front of the television

A: 你经常看电视吗?

Nǐ jīngcháng kàn diànshì ma?

Do you often watch television?

B: 不经常看，周末的晚上才看。你呢？

Bù jīngcháng kàn , zhōumò de wǎnshang cái kàn. Nǐ ne?

Not too often, only at night during the weekend . What about you?

A: 我天天都看，看电视是我的爱好。

Wǒ tiāntiān dōu kàn , kàn diànshì shì wǒ de àihào.

I watch every day. Watching television is my hobby.

B: 你最喜欢看什么节目？

Nǐ zuì xǐhuan kàn shénme jiémù?

What programme do you like best?

A: 广告和“经济信息”。

Guǎnggào hé “Jīngjì Xìnxī”.

“Advertisements” and “Economic Information”.



B: 广告节目是挺有意思的, 形式越来越活泼。

Guǎnggào jímù shì tǐng yǒu yìsi de, xíngshì yuèlǎiyuè huópō.  
Advertisements are quite interesting, the forms are getting more lively.

A: 最主要的是信息快, 有什么新产品, 你马上就知道了。

Zuì zhǔyào de shì xīnxī kuài, yǒu shénme xīn chǎnpǐn. nǐ mǎshàng jiù zhīdao le.

The main concern is the speed of information transmitted. You would know immediately if there is any new products.

B: “经济信息”的内容怎么样?

“Jīngjì Xīnxī” de nèiróng zěnmeyàng?

How is the contents of “Economic Information”?

A: 也很好, 不但商品信息快, 而且能了解中国的经济政策。

Yě hěn hǎo, búdàn shāngpǐn xīnxī kuài, érqiě néng liǎojiě Zhōngguó de jīngjì zhèngcè.

It is very good too, not only the information on commodity is fast, but it is possible to understand China's economic policies.

B: 中国最近几年经济发展很快。很多外商来投资。现在比以前开放多了。

Zhōngguó zuìjìn jǐ nián jīngjì fāzhǎn hěn kuài. Hěn duō wàishāng lái tóuzī. Xiànzài bǐ yǐqián kāifàng duō le.

In recent years, economic development in China has been very fast, many foreign investors have come to invest, it is more open now as to compared to before.

A: “经济信息”节目也批评中国经济中的问题, 比如产品

质量。

“Jīngjì Xìnxī” jiémù yě pīpíng Zhōngguó jīngjì zhōng de wèntí,  
bǐrú chǎnpǐn zhìliàng.

The program “Economic Information” also comment on the  
problem in China’s economy, like the quality of products.

B: 这很好，只有这样，才能进步得快！

Zhè hěn hǎo, zhǐyǒu zhèyàng, cái néng jìnbù de kuài!

This is very good, improvements can only be made faster in  
this manner.

## (二) 打电话 Making a phone call

A: 您是中央电视台吗？

Nín shì Zhōngyāng Diànshìtái ma?

Is that the Central Television Station?

B: 是，您找谁？

Shì, nín zhǎo shéi?

Yes, who are you looking for?

A: 我是日本兄弟公司的经理，我叫平田。

Wǒ shì Rìběn Xiōngdì Gōngsī de jīnglǐ, wǒ jiào Píngtián.

I am the manager from the company of the Japanese Brothers.

I am Hirata.

B: 您有什么事吗？

Nín yǒu shénme shì ma?

Have you got anything to inquire?

A: 是，我们公司想在中央电视台播个广告，可以吗？



Shì, wǒmen gōngsī xiǎng zài Zhōngyāng Diànshìtái bō ge guǎnggào, kěyǐ ma?

Yes, our company is thinking of telecasting an advertisement at the Central Television Station. Is it all right?

B: 可以, 你们打算什么时间播?

Kěyǐ, nǐmen dǎsuàn shénme shíjiān bō?

Sure, when do you plan to telecast?

A: 这个周末。

Zhè ge zhōumò.

This weekend.

B: 你们联系得太晚了, 马上安排有困难。

Nǐmen liánxì de tài wǎn le, mǎshàng ānpái yǒu kùnnan.

You have contacted too late, there is difficulty in making the arrangements immediately.

A: 我们的产品已经开始在中国销售, 能不能帮帮忙?

Wǒmen de chǎnpǐn yǐjīng kāishǐ zài Zhōngguó xiāoshòu. Néng bu néng bāngbang máng?

Our products have already begun selling in China. Can you please help?

B: 请等一下儿, 我看看……

Qǐng děng yíxiàr, wǒ kànkàn……

Please wait a while. Let me take a look……

A: 为了让大家都知道我们的产品, 播广告的时间越早越好。

Wèile ràng dàjiā dōu zhīdao wǒmen de chǎnpǐn, bō guǎnggào de shíjiān yuè zǎo yuè hǎo.

In order to let everybody know about our products, the time of telecast should be as early as possible.

B: 下个星期六吧!

Xià ge xīngqīliù ba!

Next Saturday then!

A: 好, 下个星期六吧。谢谢您的帮助。

Hǎo, xià ge xīngqīliù ba. Xièxie nín de bāngzhù.

All right. next saturday. Thank you for the help.

### Ⅲ. 注释: Annotation

1. “挺……的”, 这个格式用来表示程度, 是程度高的意思, 用于口语。

“挺…的”, this form is used to indicate degree, means high degree, used in oral form.

挺漂亮的      pretty beautiful

挺方便的      pretty convenient

2. “中国经济中”, “名词+中”, 意思是在名词所表示的方面。

“Noun+中”, indicate the area which the nouns indicate.

3. “开放多了”, “多”常用在形容词的后面, 表示相差的程度大, 用于比较, 句尾用“了”。

“开放多了”, “多” is often used after adj, indicate that the degree of difference is great, used for comparison. “了” is placed at the end of sentences.

胖多了      Like:      fatter

方便多了                      more convenient

进步多了                      more improved

4. “只有……才……”，“只有”表示唯一的条件，后面一定用“才”配合。

“只有” express the only condition, to complement must use “才” after it.

只有你去才行                      Like: only you can go

只有下个星期六才有时间                      Have got time only on next saturday.

5. “帮忙”，可以单用，也可以重复第一个字说成“帮帮忙”。

“帮忙” can be used independently, or to reduplicate the first word as “帮帮忙。”

#### IV. 练习;                      Exercise

1. 选择合适的词，用“挺……的”把它们连成句子;                      Use “挺…的” to join the phrases into sentence

A

这件衣服

办签证

这个电视节目

你的房间

今天的天气

这个鱼的味道

B

不错

有意思

舒服

暖和

便宜

麻烦

2. 用“形容词+多了”完成下列句子; Complete the sentence  
with “adj+多了”

- (1) 这个菜比那个菜\_\_\_\_\_。
- (2) 我的身体比以前\_\_\_\_\_。
- (3) 他的中文水平比我的\_\_\_\_\_。
- (4) 坐火车比坐飞机\_\_\_\_\_。

3. 把下列词连在句子: Join the following words into sentence

- (1) 节目 广告 越来越 最近 形式 的 活泼
- (2) 电视 能够 了解 看 政策 经济 中国
- (3) 批评了 问题 报纸上 公司 的 这个 质量
- (4) 产品 日本 销售 在中国 很多 商店 电器

V. 生词: New words

- |        |         |     |               |
|--------|---------|-----|---------------|
| 1. 爱好  | àihào   | (名) | hobby         |
| 2. 广告  | gǎngào  | (名) | advertisement |
| 3. 节目  | jiémù   | (名) | programme     |
| 4. 挺   | tǐng    | (副) | quite         |
| 5. 形式  | xíngshì | (名) | form          |
| 6. 活泼  | huópō   | (形) | active        |
| 7. 信息  | xìnxī   | (名) | information   |
| 8. 政策  | zhèngcè | (名) | policy        |
| 9. 开放  | kāifàng | (动) | open          |
| 10. 批评 | pīpíng  | (动) | comment       |

11. 中	zhōng		on, among
12. 只有	zhǐyǒu	(连)	only
13. 困难	kùnnan	(名)	difficulty
14. 销售	xiāoshòu	(动)	sell
15. 播	bō	(动)	telecast
16. 内容	nèiróng	(名)	detail
17. 帮忙	bāng máng		help
18. 进行	jìnxíng	(动)	carry
19. 中央电视台	Zhōngyāng Diànshìtái		Central Television Station

## 44. 参观博览会 Visiting the Fair

### 1. 句型: Sentence Pattern

431. 法国要办第××届国际博览会。

Fǎguó yào bàn dì ×× jiè guójì bólǎnhuì.

France wants to organise the ×× international fair.

432. 我们有一百多种商品参展。

Wǒmen yǒu yìbǎi duō zhǒng shāngpǐn cānzhǎn.

We have got more than a hundred types of commodities displayed at the exhibition.

433. 主要展品是纺织品。

Zhǔyào zhǎnpǐn shì fǎngzhīpǐn.

The main exhibition is textiles.

434. 出口产品的种类越来越多了。

Chūkǒu chǎnpǐn de zhǒnglèi yuèláiyuè duō le.

The variety of export products is increasing.

435. 这是我的名片。

Zhè shì wǒ de míngpiàn.

This is my name card.

436. 欢迎您参观我们的展品。

Huānyíng nín cānguān wǒmen de zhǎnpǐn.

We are pleased to have you taking a look at our exhibits.

437. 在这届博览会上，我们的毛衣很受欢迎。

Zài zhè jiè bólanhuì shang, wǒmen de máoyī hěn shòu huānyíng.

At this international fair our woolen clothes are very popular.

438. 我们打算向你们订购两千件。

Wǒmen dǎsuàn xiàng nǐmen dìnggòu liǎngqiān jiàn.

We plan to make an order of two thousand pieces from you.

439. 你们要求什么时候交货？

Nǐmen yāoqiú shénme shíhou jiāo huò?

When would you like us to deliver the goods?

440. 我们一定满足您的要求。

Wǒmen yīdìng mǎnzú nín de yāoqiú.

We would definitely meet your requirements.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

(在机场，一位中国人和一位外国人谈话)

At the airport a Chinese and foreigner are chatting)

A: 马丁先生，您好！

Mǎdīng xiānsheng, nín hǎo!

Mr. Marting, Hello!

B: 您好！您要去哪儿？

Nín hǎo! Nín yào qù nǎr?

Hello! where are you going?

A: 我要去法国。

Wǒ yào qù Fǎguó.

I want to go to France.

B: 最近有什么新买卖?

Zuìjìn yǒu shénme xīn mǎimài?

Are there any new business dealing recently?

A: 法国里昂国际展览中心要办第××届国际博览会。

Fǎguó Lǐ'áng Guójì Zhǎnlǎn Zhōngxīn yào bàn dì ×× jiè Guójì bólǎnhuì.

France's Lyon international Exhibition centre is organising the ×× International Fair.

B: 贵公司要去参加博览会吗?

Guì gōngsī yào qù cānjiā bólǎnhuì ma?

Is your company participating in the fair?

A: 是的, 我们有一百多种商品参展。

Shì de, wǒmen yǒu yībǎi duō zhǒng shāngpǐn cānzhǎn.

Yes, We have got more than a hundred type of commodities displayed at the fair.

B: 主要展品是什么?

Zhǔyào zhǎnpǐn shì shénme?

What are the main exhibits?

A: 主要展品是纺织品, 也有钢材、电器和农业产品。

Zhǔyào zhǎnpǐn shì fǎngzhīpǐn, yě yǒu gāngcái, diàncì hé nóngyè chǎnpǐn.

The main exhibits are textile and steel products too, electrical



and agricultural products.

B: 你们公司出口产品的种类越来越多了。

Nǐmen gōngsī chūkǒu chǎnpǐn de zhǒnglèi yuèlái yuè duō le.

The variety of products that your company is exporting is getting wider.

A: 我们不但出口种类多了, 进口种类也多了。

Wǒmen búdàn chūkǒu zhǒnglèi duō le, jìnkǒu zhǒnglèi yě duō le.

We not only have a wider variety of exports, we have a wider variety of imports too.

B: 中国的经济发展真快! 听说到中国投资的外商也越来越多。

Zhōngguó de jīngjì fāzhǎn zhēn kuài! Tīngshuō dào Zhōngguó tóu zī de wàishāng yě yuèlái yuè duō.

The pace of economic development in China is really fast. I have heard that more and more foreign investors are going to China.

A: 是的, 欢迎您也来中国投资!

Shì de, huānyíng nín yě lái Zhōngguó tóu zī!

Yes, welcome you to invest in China too.

## (二)

(参观北京国际博览会)

Visiting the Beijing International Fair)

A: 您好, 我是美国××公司的。我叫马丁。这是我的名片。

Nín hǎo, wǒ shì Měiguó ×× Gōngsī de. Wǒ jiào Mǎdīng. Zhè

shì wǒ de míngpiàn.

Hello, I am from America's × × company. I am Marting.

This is my name card.

B: 谢谢，欢迎您参观我们的展品。

Xièxie , huānyíng nín cānguān wǒmen de zhǎnpǐn.

Thank you. We are pleased to have you taking a look at our exhibits.

A: 我对你们的毛衣很感兴趣。

Wǒ duì nǐmen de máoyī hěn gǎn xìngqù.

I am interested in your woollen clothes.

B: 毛衣在这边，请跟我走。

Máoyī zài zhèbiān , qǐng gēn wǒ zǒu.

Woollen clothes are here, please follow me.



A: 谢谢。我们已经参观过了。

Xièxie. Wǒmen yǐjīng cānguān guo le.

Thank you. We have already seen.

B: 在这届博览会上，我们的毛衣很受欢迎。

Zài zhè jiè bólanhuì shang, wǒmen de máoyī hěn shòu huānyíng.

At this International fair our woollen clothes are very popular.

A: 是的，我们打算订购一批。

Shì de, wǒmen dǎsuàn dìnggòu yì pī.

Yes, we plan to make an order.

B: 谢谢。我们这次参展的展品都是新产品。

Xièxie. Wǒmen zhè cì cānzhǎn de zhǎnpǐn dōushì xīn chǎnpǐn.

Thank you. The exhibits in this fair are all the latest products.

A: 我知道。所以我打算向你们订购两千件。

Wǒ zhīdao. Suǒyǐ wǒ dǎsuàn xiàng nǐmen dìnggòu liǎngqiān jiàn.

I know, that is why I plan to make an order of two thousand pieces from you.

B: 好！你们要求什么时候交货？

Hǎo! nǐmen yāoqiú shénme shíhou jiāo huò?

All right! When would you like us to deliver the goods?

B: 九月中旬怎么样？

Jiǔ yuè zhōngxún zěnmeyàng?

How about mid-September?

A: 可以，我们一定满足您的要求。

Kěyǐ, wǒmen yídìng mǎnzú nín de yāoqiú.

Sure. We would definitely meet your requirements.

B: 好, 谢谢您。

Hǎo, xièxiè nín.

All right. Thank you.

### III. 注释: Annotation

1. “办”, “办”是一个动词, 它有用途很多, 除了“办博览会”, “办啤酒节”外, 也可以说:

“办”is a verb, It has many usages. Besides “办博览会”“Organise international fair, “办啤酒节”organise beer festival, can be said:

办事 handle affairs

办签证 get visa done

办手续 handle procedures

办工厂 set up factory

2. “要求”, 既是动词, 又是名词。

“要求” can be used as a uerb or a noun.

### IV. 练习: Exercise

1. 翻译: Translate

(1) 办舞会      办啤酒节      办交易会      办博览会

(2) 产品      展品      参展      展览

(3) 订购      交货      销售      降低

2. 完成对话: Complete the dialogues

- (1) A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 我去参加博览会了。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 这届博览会办得很成功。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 有一百多个国家参加。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 参展的展品种类很多。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 是的, 我订购了一大批商品。
- (2) A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 我订购了一批地毯。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 这批地毯花色很好看。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 质量也很不错。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 三个月以后交货。  
A: \_\_\_\_\_  
B: 是的, 我这次定货很成功。

3. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

- (1) 我们生产的毛衣很受欢迎。

那个公司	电器
中国	地毯
上海	衬衫

(2) 最近我们要办一个啤酒节。

同学们	舞会
公司	交易会
我们	新公司

V. 生词:      New words

- |        |          |       |                     |
|--------|----------|-------|---------------------|
| 1. 届   | jiè      | (量)   | <i>measure word</i> |
| 2. 博览会 | bólǎnhuì | (名)   | international fair  |
| 3. 参展  | cānzhǎn  | (动)   | participate         |
| 4. 展品  | zhǎnpǐn  | (名)   | exhibits            |
| 5. 种类  | zhǒnglèi | (名)   | variety             |
| 6. 名片  | míngpiàn | (名)   | name card           |
| 7. 毛衣  | máoyī    | (名)   | woollen clothes     |
| 8. 订购  | dìnggòu  | (动)   | make an order       |
| 9. 要求  | yāoqiú   | (动、名) | require/requirement |
| 10. 交货 | jiāo huò |       | deliver goods       |
| 11. 满足 | mǎnzú    | (动)   | meet                |
| 12. 展览 | zhǎnlǎn  | (动)   | display             |
| 13. 中心 | zhōngxīn | (名)   | centre              |
| 14. 里昂 | Lǐ'áng   |       | Lyon                |

## 45. 请帮我看中文合同

### Please have a look at the Chinese contract

#### I. 句型: Sentence Pattern

441. 他的中文很好，谈话和看报纸都没什么问题。

Tā de Zhōngwén hěn hǎo, tán huà hé kàn bào zhǐ dōu méi shénme wèntí.

His Chinese is very good, he has got no problem with conversing and reading of newspapers.

442. 只要我能做的就一定帮忙。

Zhǐyào wǒ néng zuò de jiù yí dìng bāng máng.

I would definitely help if it is within my limits.

443. 请您参加签合同仪式。

Qǐng nín cānjiā qiān hé tóng yí shì.

Please attend the ceremony of the signing of an agreement.

444. 我的中文还不够好。

Wǒ de Zhōngwén hái bú gòu hǎo.

My Chinese is not good as yet.

445. 这是中文合同书。请您仔细地看一下。

Zhè shì Zhōngwén hé tóng shū. Qǐng nín zǐ xì de kàn yí xià.

This is a contract written in Chinese, Please read carefully.

446. 请把这儿修改一下。

Qǐng bǎ zhèr xiūgǎi yíxià.

Please make some corrections here.

447. 关于发货日期，是不是可以确定？

Guānyú fāhuò rìqī, shì bu shì kěyǐ quèdìng?

Regarding the date of delivery, can we confirm it?

448. 请您在这儿签字吧。

Qǐng nín zài zhèr qiān zì ba.

Please sign here then.

449. 10月中旬可以把货全部发完。

Shí yuè zhōngxún kěyǐ bǎ huò quánbù fā wán.

The delivery can be done completely by mid-October.

450. 祝贺我们的合作圆满成功。

Zhùhè wǒmen de hézuò yuánmǎn chénggōng.

Congratulations on the complete success of our cooperation.

## II. 课文: Text

### (一)

A: 马丁先生，听说您一直在学习汉语。

Mǎdīng xiānsheng, tīngshuō nín yìzhí zài xuéxí Hànyǔ.

Mr. Marting, I have heard that you have been learning Chinese.

B: 是，我学习汉语三年了。



Shì, wǒ xuéxí Hànyǔ sān nián le.

Yes, I have learned Chinese for three years.

A: 那您的汉语水平一定很不错。

Nà nín de Hànyǔ shuǐpíng yídìng hěn búcuò.

Your Chinese standard must be good then.

B: 还可以吧，谈话和看报纸都没什么问题。

Hái kěyǐ ba, tán huà hé kàn bàozhǐ dōu méi shénme wèntí.

It is all right. I have got no problem with speaking and reading of papers.

A: 我想请您帮帮忙。

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín bāngbang máng.

I would like to ask for your help.

B: 只要我能做的就一定帮忙。

Zhǐyào wǒ néng zuò de jiù yídìng bāng máng.

I would definitely help if it is within my limits.

A: 我想请您参加今天下午的签合同仪式。

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín cānjiā jīntiān xiàwǔ de qiān hétóng yíshì.

I would like to invite you to attend the ceremony of the signing of an agreement this afternoon.

B: 你要和谁签合同？

Nǐ yào hé shéi qiān hétóng?

Who are you signing the contract with?

A: 和中国长城工业公司签合同。我们和他们做了一批买卖。

Hé Zhōngguó Chángchéng Gōngyè Gōngsī qiān hétóng. Wǒmen hé tāmen zuò le yì pī mǎimài.

With the China Great wall Industrial Company. We are invited in a business deal.

B: 你要我做什么?

Nǐ yào wǒ zuò shénme?

What do you want me to do?

A: 我请你帮助我看看中文合同, 因为我的中文不够好。

Wǒ qǐng nǐ bāngzhù wǒ kànkàn Zhōngwén hétōng, yīnwèi wǒ de Zhōngwén bú gòu hǎo.

I would like to ask you to have a look at the Chinese contract, because my Chinese is not good enough to do so.

B: 我可以参加这个签合同仪式, 不过我不懂贸易。

Wǒ kěyǐ cānjiā zhè gè qiān hétōng yíshì, bùguò wǒ bú dǒng màoùyì.

I can attend the agreement signing ceremony, however, I do not know about trading.

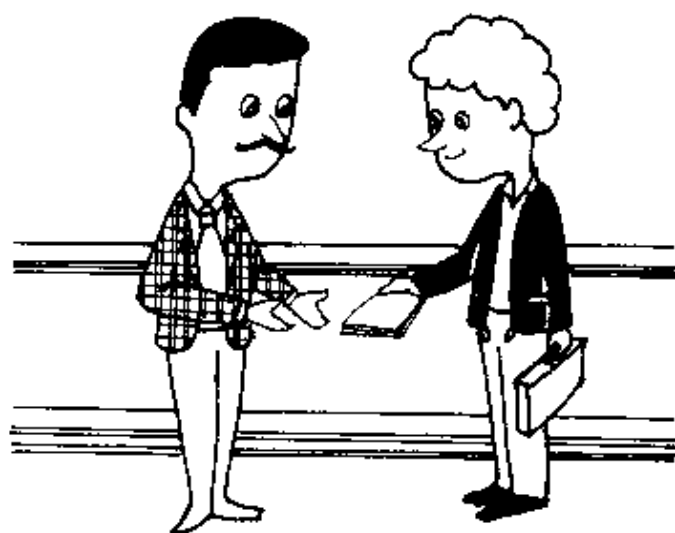
A: 没关系, 我们已经写好了英文合同, 你可以先看看。

Méi guānxì, wǒmen yǐjīng xiěhǎo le Yīngwén hétóng, nǐ kěyǐ xiān kànkàn.

It is all right. We have already made an English contract, you can have a look first.

## (二)

A: 大卫先生, 这是我们的合同书, 是中文的, 请您再仔细地看一下。



Dàwèi xiānsheng, zhè shì wǒmen de hétóngshū, shì Zhōngwén de, qǐng nín zài zìxì de kàn yíxià.

Mr. David, this is our contract. It is written in Chinese. Please read carefully.

B: 好，我请马丁先生帮助我看一下儿。

Hǎo, wǒ qǐng Mǎdīng xiānsheng bāngzhù wǒ kàn yíxià.

All right. I would ask Mr. Martin to help me with it.

A: 有什么问题吗?

Yǒu shénme wèntí ma?

Is there any questions?

B: 一点小问题，关于交货问题，英文合同说分两批，中

文合同说分三批。

Yìdiǎnr xiǎo wèntí, guānyú jiāo huò wèntí, Yīngwén hétóng shuō fēn liǎng pī, Zhōngwén hétóng shuō fēn sān pī.

There is a small question, regarding the question of delivery. The English contract states two deliveries, while the Chinese contract states three deliveries.

A: 我看一下记录。对，应该分两批。我把这儿修改一下。  
Wǒ kàn yíxià jìlù. Duì, yīnggāi fēn liǎng pī. Wǒ bǎ zhèr xiūgǎi yíxià.

Let me have a look at the records. Right, it should be two deliveries. I would make some adjustments here.

B: 谢谢!

Xièxie!

Thank you!

A: 还有别的问题吗?

Hái yǒu biéde wèntí ma?

Any other questions?

B: 关于发货日期，是不是可以确定?

Guānyú fā huò rìqī, shì bu shì kěyǐ quèdìng?

Regarding the date of delivery, can it be confirmed?

A: 这儿已经写了。我们在8月底开始发货。第一批数量不多。10月中旬可以把货全部发完。

Zhèr yǐjīng xiě le. Wǒmen zài bā yuè dǐ kāishǐ fā huò. Dì-yī pī shùliàng bù duō. Shí yuè zhōngxún kěyǐ bǎ huò quánbù fāwán.

It is already written down, We begin the delivery at the end of August. The quantity of first delivery is small. The goods can

be fully delivered in mid-October.

B: 很好, 没有别的问题了。

Hěn hǎo, méiyǒu biéde wèntí le.

Very well, there is no other questions.

A: 那请您在这儿签字吧!

Nà qǐng nín zài zhèr qiān zì ba!

Please sign here then!

B: 好。祝贺我们的合作圆满成功。

Hǎo. Zhùhè wǒmen de hézuò yuánmǎn chénggōng.

All right, congratulations on the complete success of our cooperation.

A: 希望以后继续合作。

Xīwàng yǐhòu jìxù hézuò.

Hope that we would be able to cooperate in future.

### III. 注释: Annotation

1. “没什么问题”, 意思是“没有任何问题”, “什么”在这里是虚指。  
“没什么问题” means “no other questions” “什么” here has got no exact meaning.
2. “只要”, “只要”表示必要条件, 常和“就”一起用。  
“只要”, “只要” indicate the indispensable condition, often used with “就”.

如: 只要天气好, 我就去。

Like: If the weather is fine I would go.

只要努力, 你就会学好汉语。

If you are hard-working you would master Chinese.

3. “我的中文还不够好”，“不够”常常用在形容词前，表示没有达到希望的程度，所用形容词都是褒义形容词。

“我的中文还不够好”，“不够” is often used before adjectives, to indicate the degree reached is not of expectation. All adjectives used are commendatory adjectives.

不够漂亮 not beautiful as yet

不够努力 not hard-working as yet 不够新颖 not original as yet

4. “仔细地看一下”，如果动词前有修饰成分。在修饰成分和动词之间常常用助词“地”

“仔细地看一下”，if there are modifiers before verbs, the particle “地” is often used between the modifier and the verb.

顺利地到达了 Like: reach the place smoothly

圆满地结束了 end completely

#### IV. 练习: Exercise

1. 翻译并造句: Translate and make sentences

- |           |        |
|-----------|--------|
| (1) 不够结实  | 不够活泼   |
| 不够方便      | 不够热情   |
| (2) 顺利地到达 | 仔细地检查  |
| 热情地招待     | 渐渐地暖和了 |
| (3) 全部结束  | 全部停止   |
| 全部项目      | 全部内容   |
| (4) 发货日期  | 动身日期   |

谈判日期

签证日期

2. 完成句子: Complete the following sentences

- (1) 明天只要我没事儿\_\_\_\_\_。(就……)
- (2) \_\_\_\_\_, 你的咳嗽就会很快好。(只要)
- (3) 请你们在下个月\_\_\_\_\_。(把货)
- (4) 我的中文不够好, 请你\_\_\_\_\_。(把合同书)
- (5) 合同书写得不够好, 我\_\_\_\_\_。(修改)
- (6) 你什么时候动身?\_\_\_\_\_。(确定)
- (7) 谁代表公司在\_\_\_\_\_。(签字)
- (8) 这批货。(分批)

3. 替换练习: Exchange exercises

(1) 式样还不够新颖。

价格	合理
招待	热情
学习	努力

(2) 货已经全部发完。

工作	结束
手续	办好
合同	签完

V. 生词: New words

1. 只要      zhǐyào      (连)      so long as
2. 仪式      yíshì      (名)      provided
3. 合同书      hétóngshū      (名)      contract

4.	仔细	zìxì	(形)	carefully
5.	地	de	(助)	<i>particle</i>
6.	修改	xiūgǎi	(动)	make changes
7.	发	fā	(动)	deliver
8.	货	huò	(名)	goods
9.	日期	rìqī	(名)	date
10.	确定	quèdìng	(动)	confirm
11.	签字	qiān zì		sign
12.	全部	quánbù	(名)	all
13.	祝贺	zhùhè	(动)	congratulate
14.	圆满	yuánmǎn	(形)	successful
15.	分	fēn	(动)	divide
16.	记录	jìlù	(名)	record